AL ADWAA

Gem

CONNECT 2024



4th PRIM.

SECOND TERM



Contents

Theme 3 My society

Theme 4 I'm a responsible person



Unit 7

This is where I live

هذا هو المكان حيثما أعيش



Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Al-Azhar | Answers 100% Q&A

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- read about the Nile and why it is so important.
- talk about his/her neighborhood in the past and now.
- use regular and irregular past simple verb forms.
- practice the long vowel sounds.
- practice simplifying fractions.
- write about a memory.

- يقرأ عن نهر النيل ولماذا هو مهم للغاية.
- يتحدث عن حيه فى الماضى والآن.
- يستخدم الماضى البسيط المنتظم وغير المنتظم.
- يتدرب على أصوات الحروف المتحركة الممدودة.
- يتدرب على تبسيط الكسور.
- يكتب عن ذكرى.

Did you know?

- The World * Capital of Cats in Romania has a cat * population that is four times larger than the human population.

- يبلغ تعداد القطط فى العاصمة العالمية للقطط فى رومانيا أربعة أضعاف تعداد السكان.

* capital	عاصمة	* population	تعداد سكانى

I can find it out!

- In addition to Egypt, the Nile travels through 11 other African countries: Burundi, Tanzania, Rwanda, the Democratic Republic of the Congo, Kenya, Uganda, Eritrea, Sudan, Ethiopia, and South Sudan.

Study

Lesson 1

The Nile نهر النيل

Watch a video

Main vocabulary

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



city
مدينة



building
مبنى



river
نهر



forest
غابـة



desert
صحـراء



village
قريـة



oasis
واحــة



mountain
جبـل

Extra vocabulary

quiz	اختبار	the Nile	نهر النيل	interesting (adj.)	شيق/ مثير للاهتمام
life	حياة	the shortest (adj.)	الأقصر	the longest (adj.)	الأطول
the widest (adj.)	الأوسع	both	كلاهما/ كُلٌ من	Amazon	نهر الأمازون
kilometer	كيلومتر (وحدة قياس)	center	مركز	earth	الأرض
Australia	أستراليا	sure (adj.)	متأكد	Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
clearly	بوضوح	branch	فـرع	reptiles	زواحف



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما فى (city).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) فى (desert) ينطق /z/ (ز).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) فى (village) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج).

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sound	يبدو	sounded	guess	يخمن	guessed
decide	يقرر	decided	check	يفحص/ يراجع	checked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
bring	يُحضر	brought	know	يعرف	knew
think	يعتقد/ يفكر	thought	choose	يختار	chose

Expressions and Phrases

of course	طبعًا/ بالتأكيد	the whole of Egypt	جميع أنحاء مصر	come on	هيـا
bring life	يجلب الحياة	that's like	هذا يبدو مثل	last one	الأخير

Important sentences جمل هامة

- The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. - يجلب النيل الحياة لمصر كلها.
- The Nile is 6,670 kilometers, it's like traveling to the center of the earth. - طول نهر النيل هو ٦,٦٧٠ كيلومتر، إنه يشبه السفر إلى مركز الأرض.
- The Nile has two branches in Egypt. - نهر النيل له فرعان في مصر.

Vocabulary Check

أسـماء البلـدان والأنهـار والأماكـن المحـددة هـى أسـماء علـم، لـذا يجـب أن تكتبهـا بأحـرف كبيـرة.

e.g.
- Egypt - Australia
- Nile - Amazon
- Cairo Tower

تـتغير بعض الكلمات تمامًا في صيغة الجمع ولا تـتبع القواعد.

e.g. oasis ⟶ oases



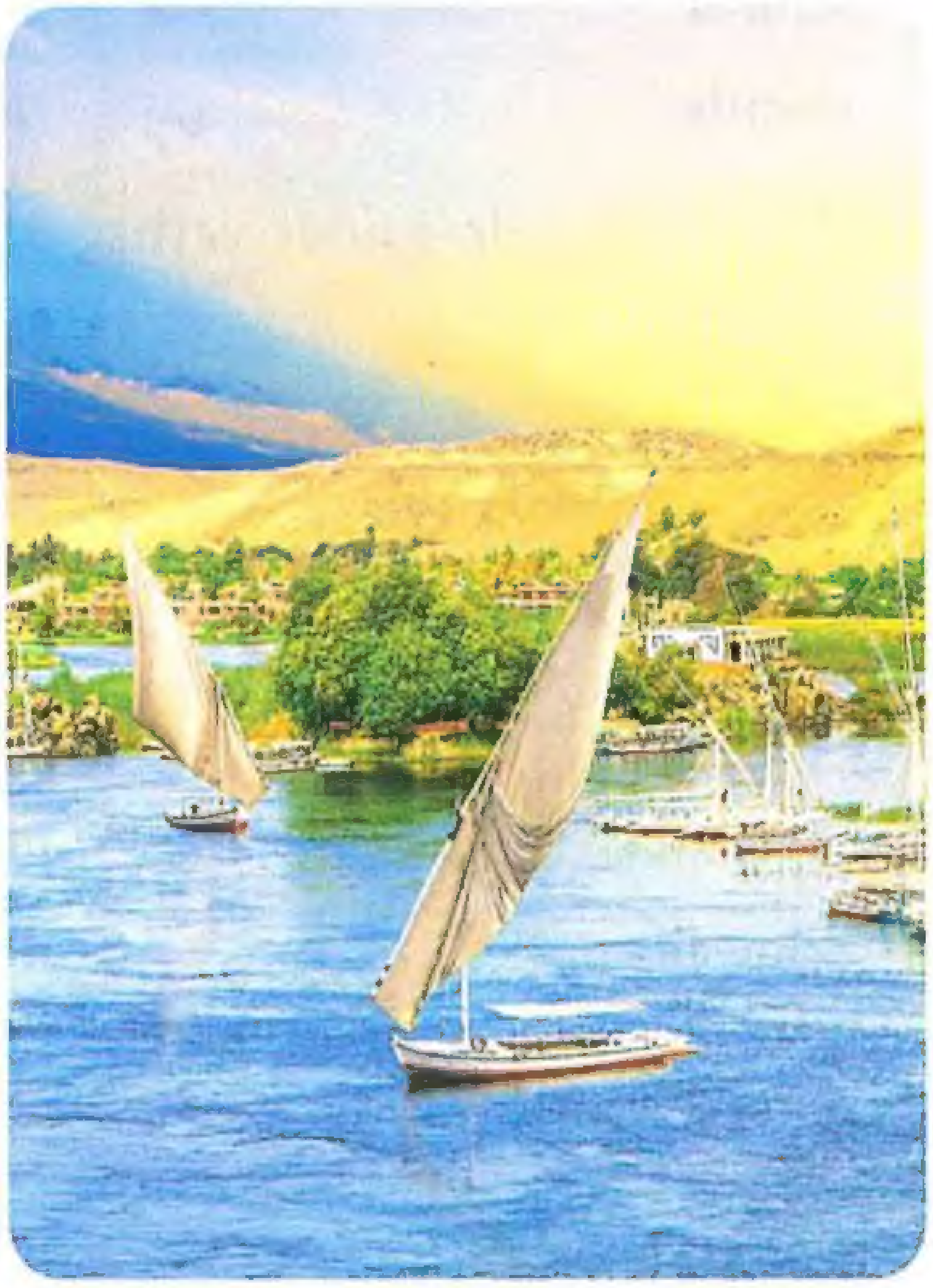

Check point

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My apartment is in a big (mountain – building – village – desert) on the sixteenth floor.
2. Many different kinds of fish live in the (forest – river – oasis – building).
3. Yesterday, we went to Cairo to see the (Amazon – Cairo Tower – Australia – forest).
4. I (guess – bring – sound – do) it's the longest, what do you think?

Listening script SB

Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Sara: Let's do this quiz.
دعينا نقوم بهذا الاختبار.



Dina: What is it about?
عن ماذا يدور الاختبار؟



Sara: The Nile.
نهر النيل.



Dina: That sounds very interesting.
يبدو هذا مثيرًا للاهتمام.



Sara: Of course, the Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. No River Nile, no Egypt. Come on, let's try. Question 1, which sentence is true? Is the Nile the shortest, the longest, or the widest river in the world?
بالطبع، يجلب النيل الحياة لمصر كلها. إذا لم يكن هناك نهر النيل، فلا وجود لمصر. هيا دعينا نحاول. السؤال الأول، أى جملة هى الصحيحة؟ هل نهر النيل هو أقصر، أم أطول، أم أوسع نهر فى العالم؟



Dina: Hmm. I don't know. I guess it's the longest, what do you think?
حسنًا. لا أعلم. أعتقد أنه الأطول، ماذا تعتقدين؟



Sara: Yeah, I know both the Amazon and the Nile are very, very long. Let's choose 'b'. Next question: 'The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long, is it like traveling to the center of the earth, traveling to the moon, or traveling to Australia?
نعم، أعلم أن نهرى الأمازون والنيل طويلان جدًا جدًا. دعنا نختار «ب». السؤال التالى: يبلغ طول النيل ٦٦٧٠ كيلومترًا ، هل يشبه السفر إلى مركز الأرض، أم السفر إلى القمر، أم السفر إلى أستراليا؟



Dina: Maybe traveling to the center of the earth?
ربما السفر إلى مركز الأرض؟



Sara

Hmm, I'm not sure, that sounds like a good guess. Number 3, we need to look at the pictures and decide which river is the Nile.

حسنًا ، لست متأكدة، هذا يبدو وكأنه تخمين جيد. رقم ٣ ، نحن بحاجة إلى إلقاء نظرة على الصور وتحديد أى نهر هو النيل.



Dina

I think it's 'c'.

أعتقد أنه «ج».

Sara

Why?

لمـاذا؟

Dina

In 'c' you can see the Cairo Tower, so it's clearly in Egypt!

فى «ج» يمكنك أن ترى برج القاهرة ، لذلك من الواضح أنه فى مصر!

Sara

OK, last one. How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt?

حسنًا، آخر واحد. كم عدد فروع النيل فى مصر؟

Dina

I'm going to say three, that sounds like a good number. Erm, check on your phone.

سأقول ثلاثة، يبدو هذا عددًا جيدًا. ممم ، تحققى من هاتفك.

Sara

OK. Aha! There are 2 branches!

حسنًا. آها! يوجد فرعان!

Language Notes

① **Superlative adjectives:** صفات التفضيل:

the + adjective + est

e.g. The Nile is the longest river in the world.

للسؤال عن الطول:

② **How long ...?** كم الطول ...؟

e.g. A: How long is the Nile?
B: It is 6,670 kilometers long.

للسؤال عن العدد:

③ **How many ...?** كم العدد ...؟

e.g. A: How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt?
B: There are 2 branches.

Did you know?

The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it. It is the second largest reptile in the world. It is between 3.5 - 6 m long.

النيل موطن لأنواع مختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والسلاحف. يعيش فيه أحد أكبر الزواحف على كوكب الأرض ، وهو تمساح النيل. إنه ثانى أكبر الزواحف فى العالم يتراوح طوله بين ٣٫٥ إلى ٦ أمتار.



Practice — Lesson 1

30

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

1 The Nile is the .... river in the world.
(a. tallest – b. biggest – c. longest – d. shortest)

2 It is .... kilometers long.
(a. 6,670 – b. 5,677 – c. 8,800 – d. 7,500)

3 It is home for different kinds of ....
(a. lions – b. fish – c. monkeys – d. cats)

4 The Nile has .... branches.
(a. 4 – b. 5 – c. 6 – d. 2)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 5

1 There are a lot of trees in the ....

a) river b) lake c) building d) forest

2 The Nile is the .... river in the world.

a) shortest b) tallest. c) longest d) smallest

3 My grandpa is a farmer. He lives in a ....

a) desert b) village c) city d) river

4 Ali could climb the .... last week.

a) moon b) earth c) mountain d) oasis

5 A: How .... is the Nile? B: It's 6,670 km long.

a) often b) many c) old d) long

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 4

meter – longest – center – brings – important

The Amazon and the Nile are very long rivers. But the Nile is the ....(1)............ river in the world. It's 6,670 kilometers long. This is like traveling to the ....(2)............ of the earth. The Nile is ....(3)............ to all of us. It ....(4)............ life to the whole of Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It's like traveling to the center of the earth. It travels through eleven countries. It's 6,670 kilometers long. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is very important to the Egyptians. It provides Egypt with water, food, transportation, and excellent soil for growing food. The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. No River Nile, no Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) the Amazon
   b) the transportation
   c) the Nile
   d) different countries
2. The underlined word "excellent" means ....
   a) bad
   b) the worst
   c) ugly
   d) great

B Answer the following questions:

3. How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt?

   ....

4. What does the Nile provide Egypt with?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس: 4

1. The Nile (have) .... two branches in Egypt.
2. How (tall) .... is the Nile?
3. The Nile (bring) .... life to the whole of Egypt.
4. The Cairo Tower (are) .... in Egypt.

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

"The Nile"

longest – branches – brings life

....

....

....

....

Study Lesson 2

A short story about Grandpa قصة قصيرة عن الجد

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

memories	ذكريات	trucks	شاحنات	curious (adj.)	فضولى

Extra vocabulary

excited (adj.)	متحمس	Colossi of Memnon	تمثالا ممنون	quiet (adj.)	هادئ
visitors	زوار	space	مكان	ground	أرض
metal	معدن	smile	ابتسامة	inside	داخل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	cross	يعبر	crossed
wonder	يتعجب	wondered	start	يبدأ	started
pull	يسحب	pulled	bury	يدفن	buried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow up	ينمو	grew up	dig	يحفر	dug
say	يقول	said	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

from all around the world	من كل أنحاء العالم	look at	ينظر إلى
pull out	يسحب للخارج	a big smile on his face	ابتسامة كبيرة على وجهه
sit down	يجلس	look inside	ينظر للداخل

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Grandpa lived in a village near Colossi of Memnon. - كان الجد يعيش فى قرية مجاورة لتمثال ممنون.
- The village was very quiet. - كانت القرية هادئة للغاية.
- He buried a metal box when he was eight. It was a box of his memories.
- لقد دفن الجد صندوقًا من المعدن عندما كان عمره ٨ سنوات . كان هذا صندوق ذكرياته.

Grandpa and his box of memories

الجد وصندوق ذكرياته

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

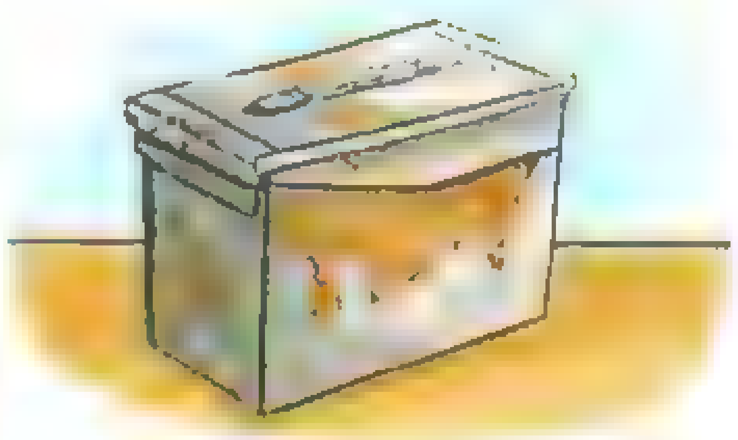


“Look, this was my street.” Grandpa was very excited. We were in the village where he grew up. It is near the Colossi of Memnon.

«انظر، هذا كان شارعى». كان جدى متحمسًا للغاية. كنا فى القرية التى نشأ فيها. إنها بالقرب من تمثالى ممنون.

“It was very quiet when I lived here,” said Grandpa. “Now, there are lots of visitors from all around the world.” “That’s where my friend(1) lived. We played(2) football on this street. There were no cars then.”

قال جدى: «كان الجو هادئًا جدًا عندما كنت أعيش هنا». «الآن هناك الكثير من الزوار من جميع أنحاء العالم».
«هذا هو المكان الذى عاش فيه صديقى. لعبنا كرة القدم فى هذا الشارع. لم تكن هناك سيارات حينها».



Grandpa looked right and left, and he crossed the road. The road had lots of(3) trucks and cars.

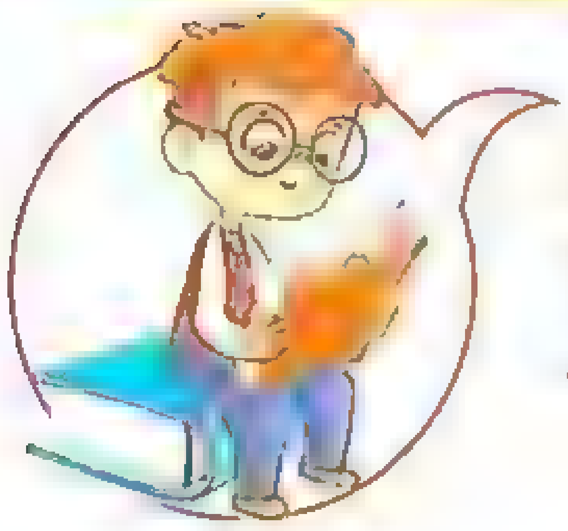
And this, he said “is where I lived.” We looked at the space. There was no house. There was only grass and one big tree. “Hmm, I wonder. It was so many years(4) ago....” Grandpa looked at the tree. Grandpa walked to the tree. He looked at the ground. Then he started digging. He pulled out an old, metal box. He had a big smile on his face.

(1)	صديق
(2)	لعب
(3)	كثير من
(4)	سنوات عديدة

نظر الجد يمينًا ويسارًا وعبر الطريق. كان على الطريق الكثير من الشاحنات والسيارات. قال: «وهذا هو المكان الذى عشت فيه». نظرنا إلى المكان. لم يكن هناك منزل. لم يكن هناك سوى عشب وشجرة واحدة كبيرة. «هممم، أتعجب: لقد مرت سنوات عديدة ...» نظر الجد إلى الشجرة. مشى الجد إلى الشجرة. نظر إلى الأرض. ثم بدأ فى الحفر. أخرج صندوقًا معدنيًا قديمًا. كانت لديه ابتسامة كبيرة على وجهه.

“Look!” he said. He was very excited. “We were eight years old when we buried this. Let’s sit down and look inside the box.” “Yes, please,” I said. “I’m very curious!”.

قال: «انظر!» كان متحمسًا جدًا. كنا فى الثامنة من العمر عندما دفنا هذا. دعنا نجلس وننظر داخل الصندوق. قلت، حسنًا، من فضلك. أنا أشعر بالفضول.



I can find it out!

The Colossi of Memnon are two large statues that exist in Luxor. They were built around 1350 BC.

تمثالا ممنون هما تمثالان كبيران موجودان فى الأقصر. تم بناؤهما حوالى ١٣٥٠ قبل الميلاد.

Check point

1 How did Grandpa feel when he saw his old street?

....

2 What did Grandpa pull out?

....

B Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage:

The past simple tense is used for expressing an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى الماضى فى وقت معين.

Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة

1. Regular verbs: **الأفعال المنتظمة:**

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + d/ed/ied ... .



We played football on this street.

لعبنا كرة القدم فى هذا الشارع.

ed → We add "ed" at the end of most regular verbs.

- يضاف "ed" فى نهاية معظم الأفعال المنتظمة.

e.g. look → looked

d → When a verb ends in "e", we add only "d" at the end of the verb.

- عندما ينتهى الفعل بـ "e" نضيف فقط "d" فى نهاية الفعل.

e.g. live → lived

ied → When a verb ends in "y" preceded by a consonant letter, we delete the "y" and add "ied" at the end of the verb.

- عندما ينتهى الفعل بحرف الـ "y" مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، نحذف الـ "y" ونضيف "ied" فى نهاية الفعل.

e.g. bury → buried

doubling → When a verb ends in a consonant preceded by a vowel, we double the last consonant when adding the "ed".

- عندما ينتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة الـ "ed".

e.g. stop → stopped

2. Irregular verbs:

الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

Some verbs don't follow the rules and change in form when they come in the past tense.

- هناك بعض الأفعال التى لا تتبع القواعد وتتغير فى الشكل عندما تأتى بصيغة الماضى.

e.g.

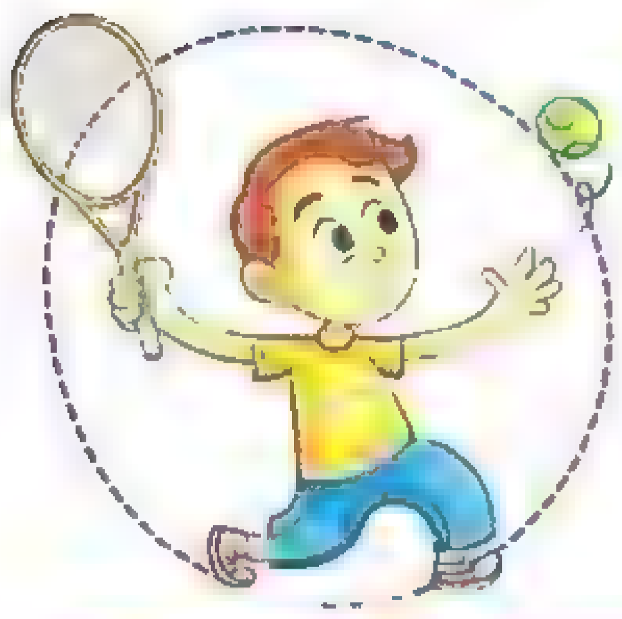
Present	Past	Present	Past
am/ is	was	are	were
grow	grew	say	said
have	had	sit	sat
feel	felt	see	saw
find	found	know	knew



The village was quiet in the past.

القرية كانت هادئة فى الماضى.

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:



Subject + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل...

He didn't play football yesterday.

هو لم يلعب كرة القدم بالأمس.

Yes/No question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.



A: Did you jump yesterday?
B: Yes, I did.



A: Did he play football on this street?
B: No, he didn't.

Wh-question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

A: Question word	did	subject	(inf.) مصدر الفعل...?
B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل			



A: When did you get up yesterday?

B: I got up at 6 o'clock yesterday.

Note

- عند الإجابة تحول "you" فى السؤال إلى "I" أو "We".

Key words: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday أمس — e.g. I went to my school yesterday.

last (week, month, year, etc.) (الأسبوع أو الشهر أو العام .... الماضى) — e.g. She played tennis last week.

ago منذ — e.g. We lived here many years ago.

Check point

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Grandpa's village (is – were – was – are) very quiet many years ago.

2 I (play – playing – plays – played) tennis yesterday.

3 He (don't – didn't – doesn't – do) visit his grandpa's village last week.

4 (Did – Do – Does – Is) you visit your grandpa's village last year?

5 I (study – studied – studying- studies) English yesterday.

6 When did Hazem (go – going – went – goes) to school yesterday?

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

1 Grandpa lived in a small ....
(a. village – b. city – c. town – d. building)

2 The village was near the ....
(a. river – b. lake – c. sea – d. Nile)

3 He played .... with his friends.
(a. tennis – b. volleyball – c. basketball – d. football)

4 There were no ....
(a. cars – b. trees – c. animals – d. trains)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1 Grandpa .... a box of his memories when he was eight years old.

a) said b) grew c) buried d) crossed

2 I have a lot of beautiful .... of my old village.

a) boxes b) memories c) trucks d) trees

3 I ....to my school last week.

a) buried b) visited c) walked d) played

4 There were no .... in the past.

a) cars b) trees c) villages d) ground

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 4

old – play – trees – quiet – road

I visited my grandpa's house in the village where he grew up. It was ....(1).......... when he was young. He could ....(2).......... football on the street as there weren't any cars. There were lots of tall ....(3).......... and green lands. Life was simple then. Now, there is a lot of noise and the ....(4).......... has lots of trucks and cars.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

5

1 We (was) .... eight years old when we buried the box of memories.

2 The village (were) .... very quiet in the past.

3 Which subject (do) .... you study yesterday?

4 They (doesn't) .... go to school on Fridays.

5 Ahmed (visit) .... his uncle last week.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

1 ahmed pulled out an old, metal box

....

2 where did you go yesterday

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

"The village where your grandpa lived"

quiet – cars - play football

....

....

....

....

Study Lesson 3

A A short story

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

hole	حفرة	pleased (adj.)	مسرور	delighted (adj.)	مبتهج
excited (adj.)	متحمس	mice	فئران	moral	الدرس الأخلاق (العبرة)

Extra vocabulary

the country	الريف	ground	أرض	seeds	بذور
pretty (adj.)	جميل	bright (adj.)	لامع	lights	أضواء
reason	سبب	smoke	دخان	noise	ضوضاء
incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق	loud (adj.)	صاخب	scared (adj.)	خائف
sounds	أصوات	smells	روائح	voice	صوت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs **أفعـــال منتظمــة**

Present		Past	Present		Past
wait	ينتظر	waited	cover	يغطي	covered
start	يبدأ	started	prepare	يعد/يجهز	prepared

Irregular verbs **أفعال غير منتظمة**

Present		Past	Present		Past
give	يعطي	gave	know	يعرف	knew
come	يأتي	came	catch	يمسك/ يلحق	caught

Expressions and Phrases

full of	ملىء بـ	catch a train	يلحق بقطار
no reason to wait	لا يوجد سبب للانتظار	prepared for	مُعدًّا لـ
around the corner	حول الزاوية	go back to	يعود إلى



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (gh) حرفان لا ينطقان (silent) كما في كلمات (bright)/ (lights)/ (delighted)/ (eight).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) قد ينطق /z/ (ز) كما في (reason)/ (noise).

City Mouse and Country Mouse فأر المدينة وفأر القرية

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

The city mouse visited[1] the country mouse in his hole in the ground.
The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds.



زار فأر المدينة فأر الريف فى حفرته فى الأرض. كان فأر الريف مسرورًا. أعطى صديقه العشب والبذور.

(1) زار

The middle

The city mouse said, "Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?"
The country mouse was delighted and very excited.
The city mouse stopped eating[2] and said, "There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight."
The two friends ran to the train, just as[3] it started to rain.
In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars and the noise was incredibly loud. The country mouse was scared.
He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells.
Suddenly a cat's voice said, "Hmm, two mice and some bread."

قال فأر المدينة: «شكرًا لك. هل نعلم أن المدينة جميلة ومليئه بالأضواء الساطعة، فلماذا لا تأتى وترى؟» كان فأر الريف مبتهجًا ومتحمسًا للغاية. توقف فأر المدينة عن الأكل وقال: «لا يوجد سبب للانتظار. يمكننا اللحاق بقطار فى الثامنة». ركض الصديقان إلى القطار عندما بدأ المطر يهطل. فى المدينة، غطى دخان السيارات النجوم وكانت الضوضاء عالية (صاخبة) بشكل لا يصدق. كان فأر الريف خائفًا. لم يكن مستعدًا للعديد من الأصوات والروائح الجديدة. وفجأة قال قط: «هممم، فأران وبعض الخبز».

(2) توقف عن الأكل

(3) عندما

The end

"Run, run, run," said the city mouse. They ran around the corner. The country mouse said, "Thank you, my friend, the city is exciting, but it's time for[4] me to go back to the country and back to where life is good for me."

قال فأر المدينة: «اركض، اركض، اركض». ركضا حول الزاوية. قال فأر الريف، «شكرًا لك يا صديقى، المدينة رائعة، ولكن حان الوقت للعودة إلى الريف والعودة إلى حيث تكون الحياة جيدة بالنسبة لى».

(4) حان الوقت لـ

Check point

1 What food did the country mouse give the city mouse? SB

....

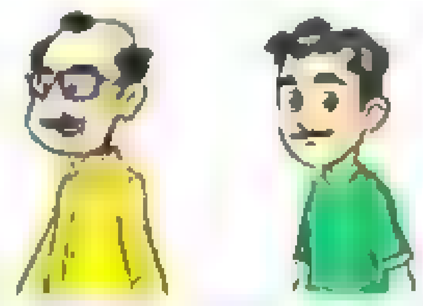
2 Does the country mouse like the city? Why?

....

Vocabulary Check

(١) تتغير بعض الكلمات تمامًا فى صيغة الجمع ولا تتبع القواعد.

e.g.

	Singular			Plural	
	a mouse	فأر		mice	فئران
	a man	رجل		men	رجال

(٢) تنتهى بعض الصفات بـ (ing) والبعض الآخر ينتهى بـ (ed):

(ing) adjectives	(ed) adjectives
They describe the thing that causes the emotion. يصفون الشيء الذى يسبب المشاعر.	They describe emotions; they tell us how people feel. يصفون المشاعر. يخبروننا كيف يشعر الناس.
e.g. The city is exciting.	e.g. The city mouse was very excited.

What do you like about the country/city and what don't you like?

Pros	Cons
- In the country: There are few sounds and smells. - In the city: It is pretty and full of bright lights.	- In the country: Life is slow and too quiet. - In the city: The smoke from the cars covers the stars and the noise is incredibly loud.

Tip! A **moral** is a value you learn from a story you read or from a situation in life.
الأخلاق هى القيمة التى تتعلمها من قصة تقرؤها أو من موقف فى الحياة.

e.g. The story has a moral. It says that different people like different things.
القصة لها قيمة أخلاقية. تقول أن الأشخاص المختلفين يحبون أشياء مختلفة.

B Pronunciation

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Long vowels:

/eɪ/	/iː/	/aɪ/	/əʊ/
gave أعطى	see يرى	my ملكي	no لا
eight ثمانية	pleased مسرور	bright لامع	hole حفرة
wait ينتظر	seeds بذور	lights أضواء	know يعرف
train قطار	eating يأكل	why لماذا	go يذهب
rain مطر	me أنا	delighted مبتهج	slow بطيء
		excited متحمس	smoke دخان
		life حياة	
		mice فئران	

Note We use different letter combinations to pronounce the same sound.

نستخدم حروف مدمجة مختلفة لنطق نفس الصوت.

e.g. gave (a-e) /eɪ/

wait (ai) /eɪ/

Math

Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

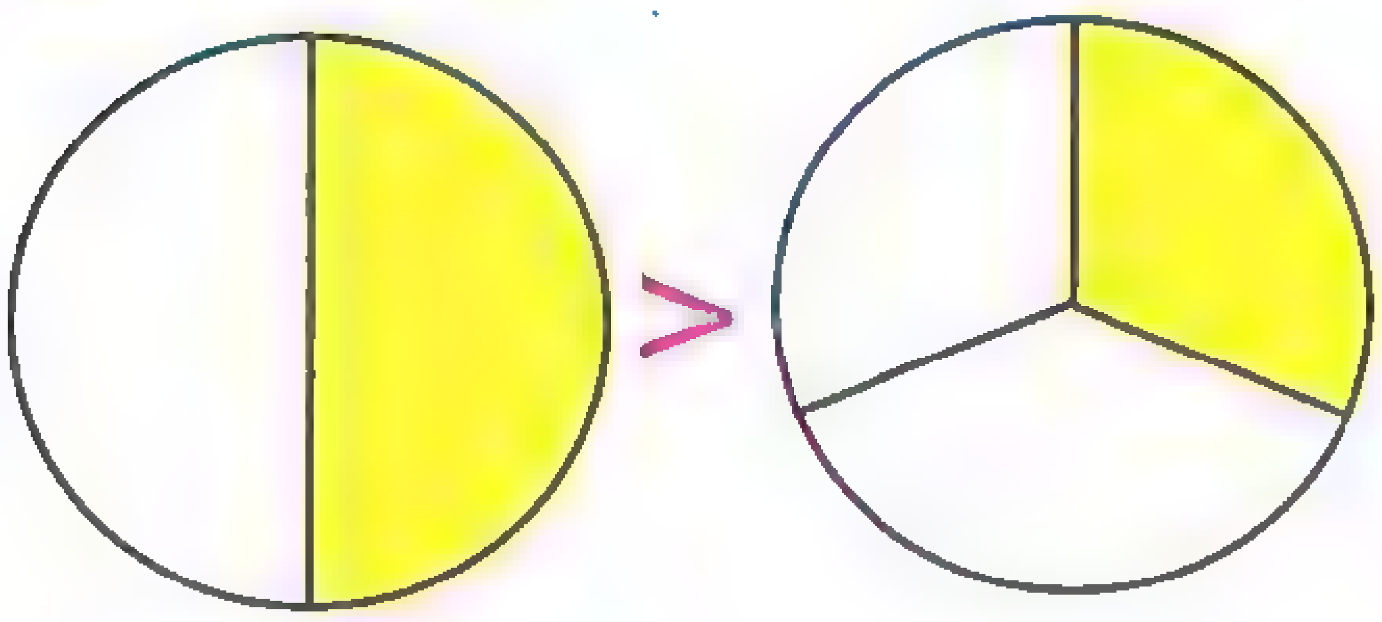
Numerator → 1 (البسط)

Denominator → 2 (المقام)

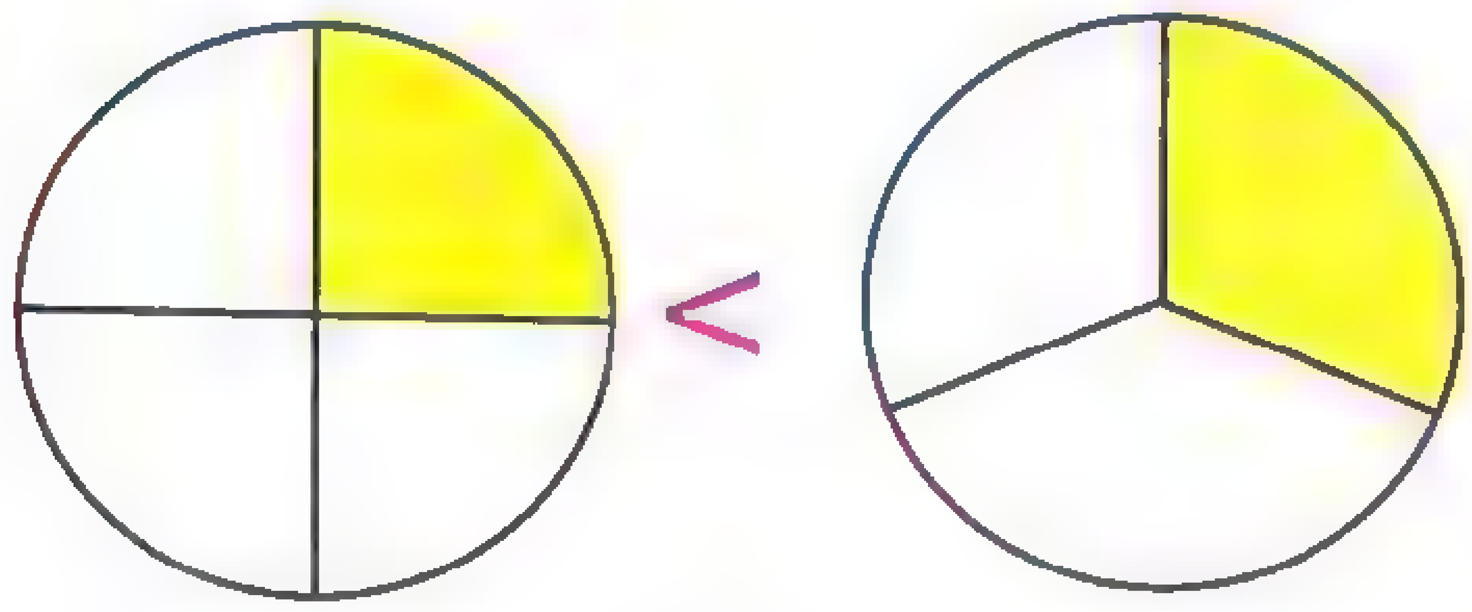
$$\frac{1}{2}$$

bigger than أكبر من	→ > ←	smaller than أصغر من	the same as يساوي =

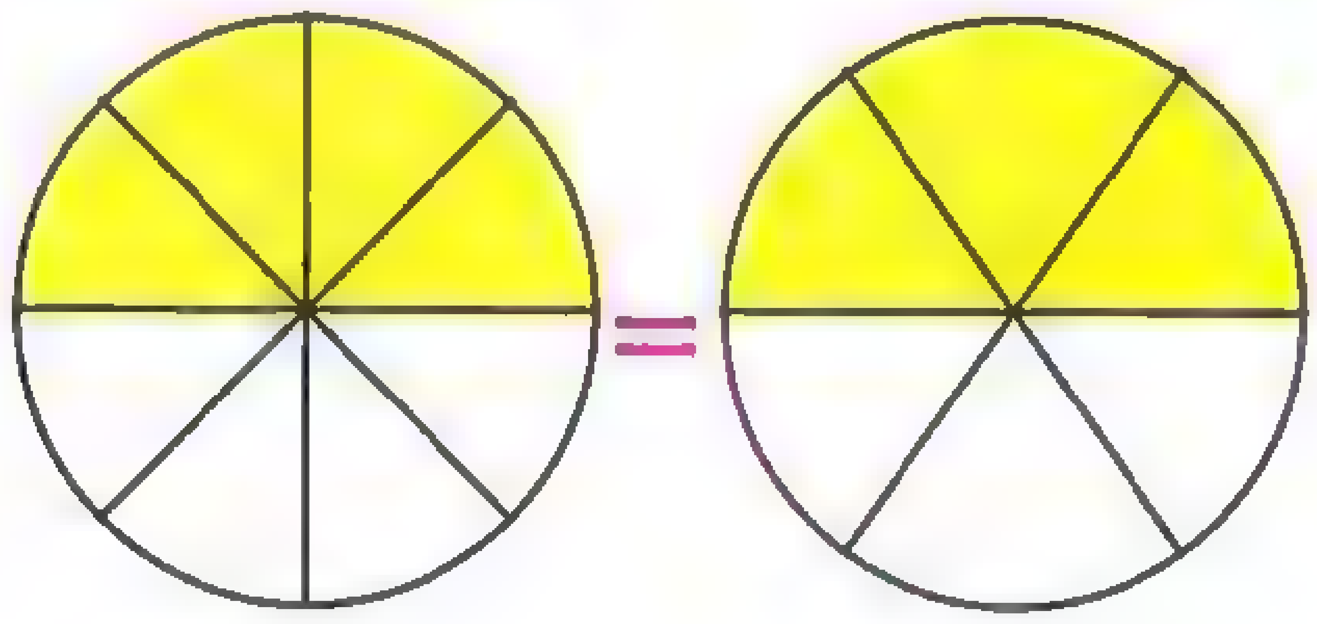
e.g.



$\frac{1}{2}$ is bigger than $\frac{1}{3}$



$\frac{1}{4}$ is smaller than $\frac{1}{3}$



$\frac{4}{8}$ is the same as $\frac{3}{6}$

Tip! We can make a fraction simpler by dividing the numerator and denominator by the same number.

يمكننا تبسيط الكسر عن طريق قسمة البسط والمقام على نفس الرقم.

e.g. $\frac{10}{40} = \frac{10 \div 10}{40 \div 10} = \frac{1}{4}$

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

6

1 The city mouse visited the country mouse ....
(a. last week – b. tomorrow – c. evening – d. afternoon)

2 The country mouse was ....
(a. excited – b. sad – c. angry – d. tired)

3 The city mouse invited the country mouse to ....
(a. come to the city – b. play football – c. go to the garden – d. play tennis)

4 The two mice took the .... to the city.
(a. bus – b. train – c. car – d. plane)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

1 The country mouse gave the city mouse ....

a) grass b) cakes c) milk d) water

2 The .... from the cars covers the stars.

a) sounds b) smoke c) lights d) reason

3 I .... my mother a present.

a) gave b) wait c) eat d) see

4 .... do you like to live in the city?

a) Why b) What c) How d) Which

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

4

like – noisy – lights – smoke – country

My best friend is called Hani. He lives in the city. The city is full of bright ....(1)............. But the air is filled with ....(2).............. . It's incredibly ....(3).............. in the city. I don't like it when I visit the city. I prefer to live in the ....(4).............. . There are few sounds and smells in the country.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

I'm Huda. My friend Ola lives in the country. I like to visit her during the summer holidays. Life in the country is very quiet. There aren't many cars, and the streets aren't very busy. There are many trees and farming lands, so the air is very fresh and clean. Life in the country is quiet and simple, but I prefer to live in a big city. There are many shops in the city.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 There are many .... in the country.

a) cars b) trees c) trucks d) shops

2 The opposite of the underlined word 'quiet' is ....

a) tall b) noisy c) calm d) fast

Answer the following questions:

3 When does Huda visit Ola?

....

4 Why does Huda prefer to live in the city?

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 1

the city mouse was very excited

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

"Life in the country"

- How is life in the country?
- What's special about the country?
- Why do you like to live in the country?

....

....

....

....

Study

Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

nervous (adj.)	عصبى/ متوتر	backpack	حقيبة الظهر	gate	بوابة
neighborhood	الحى	shopping mall	مول تجارى	electricity	الكهرباء

Extra vocabulary

first day	اليوم الأول	toys	ألعاب	gray	رمادي
classroom	فصل دراسى	math	رياضيات	next	التالى
pants	بنطلون	excited (adj.)	متحمس	new (adj.)	جديد
neighbors	جيران	noisy (adj.)	مزعج	gas car	سيارات تعمل بالوقود
shopping area	منطقة تسوق	shoe store	متجر أحذية	modern (adj.)	حديث

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
remember	يتذكر	remembered	stay	يبقى	stayed
carry	يحمل	carried	walk	يمشى	walked
cry	يبكى	cried	study	يدرس	studied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
put on	يرتدى	put on	sit	يجلس	sat
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	drive	يقود	drove

Expressions and Phrases

start school	يبدأ العام الدراسى	staying at home	البقاء فى المنزل
say goodbye	يودع	(be) called	يسمى/ يدعى
It was fun!	كان ممتعًا!	Then and now	فى الماضى والحاضر
do a history project	يقوم بعمل مشروع تاريخى	as much as possible	بقدر المستطاع

A Writing

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

My first day of school

by Younis



How was Younis on his first day of school?

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived[1] in Aswan.
I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys,
I didn't want[2] to go to school.

أتذكر يومى الأول فى المدرسة، كنت فى السادسة من عمرى، وعشت فى أسوان.
كنت متوترًا للغاية. أحببت البقاء فى المنزل مع عائلتى. أردت أن ألعب بألعابى، لم أرغب فى الذهاب إلى المدرسة.

What did Younis wear?

I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes[3].
I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school.

ارتديت تيشرت أزرق، وبنطلونًا رماديًا، وحذاءً أسود. حملت حقيبة الظهر. مشيت أنا وأمى إلى المدرسة.

What happened at school?

At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Marwan.
The teacher was very kind[4]. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

عند بوابة المدرسة أردت البكاء. قلت وداعًا ومشيت إلى الفصل. طلبت منى المعلمة أن أجلس بجانب ولد يسمى (يدعى) مروان. كانت المعلمة لطيفة جدًا. درسنا الرياضيات ولعبنا الألعاب؛ كان الأمر ممتعًا!

Did he want to go back to school?

The next day, I wasn't nervous. I was excited. I wanted to see my new friend, Marwan. I wanted to learn math and I wanted to go to school.

فى اليوم التالى، لم أكن متوترًا. كنت متحمسًا. أردت أن أرى صديقى الجديد مروان. كنت أرغب فى تعلم الرياضيات وأردت الذهاب إلى المدرسة.

(1)	عشت
(2)	يريد
(3)	حذاء
(4)	طيب (عطوف)

Tip! When we write notes, we use key words. We do not write sentences. We can use our notes to plan writing.

عندما نكتب ملاحظات، نستخدم الكلمات الرئيسية. نحن لا نكتب الجمل. يمكننا استخدام ملاحظاتنا للتخطيط للكتابة.

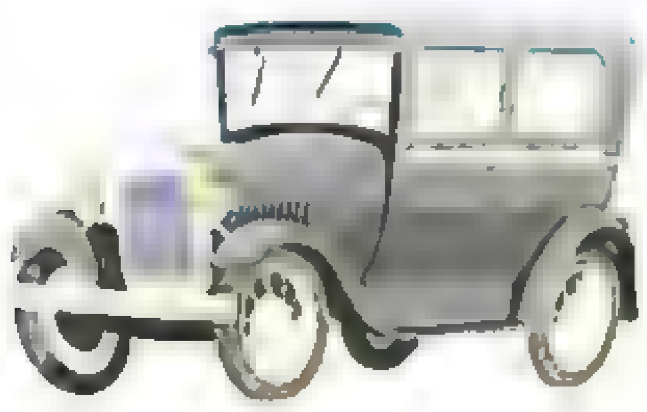
B Project

My town then and now

We are doing a history project in school about our town. We looked at old photos. We spoke to our older neighbors to find out[1] as much as possible.

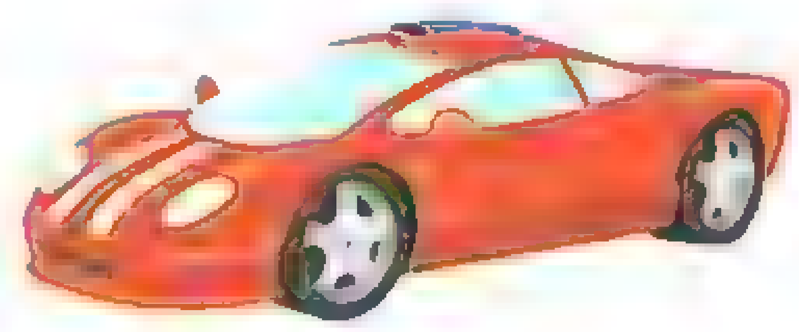
نقوم بعمل بحث تاريخى فى المدرسة عن مدينتنا. نظرنا إلى الصور القديمة. تحدثنا إلى جيراننا القدامى لنستكشف المدينة قدر الإمكان.

(1)	يكتشف
(2)	أكثر نظافة
(3)	أكثر هدوءًا



Grandma says that her mom and dad drove cars like this. All the cars were gas cars. They were very noisy.

تقول الجدة إن أمها وأباها كانا يقودان سيارات كهذه. كانت جميع السيارات تسير بالغاز. كانت تتسبب فى الكثير من الضوضاء.



Now we have a car that uses electricity and gas; it's much cleaner[2] and quieter[3].

الآن لدينا سيارة تسير بالكهرباء والغاز. إنها أقل تلويثًا وأكثر هدوءًا.



Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays.

كانت مدينتنا بها منطقة تسوق، لكنها كانت قديمة جدًا. كان أبى يعمل فى متجر أحذية أيام السبت.



Today we have a big modern shopping mall, but I don't like shopping! I want to play football.

اليوم لدينا مركز تسوق حديث وكبير، لكنى لا أحب التسوق! أريد أن ألعب كرة القدم.

Check point

1 What is Seleem's project at school about? SB

....

2 How were the cars in the past?

....

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

1. I am doing a .... project in my school.
   (a. history – b. math – c. science – d. Arabic)
2. The project is about my ....
   (a. village – b. town – c. city – d. club)
3. I talked to my .... to find information.
   (a. family – b. friends – c. neighbors – d. teachers)
4. In the past, the cars were very ....
   (a. noisy – b. quiet – c. modern – d. clean)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. I .... a blue T-shirt and gray pants for school.
   a) carry b) find c) put on d) look
2. Gas cars were very ....
   a) noisy b) cute c) quiet d) nervous
3. We are .... a history project in school about our town.
   a) making b) doing c) driving d) playing
4. Our .... is very quiet and clean. I like living here.
   a) school b) store c) neighborhood d) mall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 4

kind – happy – carried – nervous – subjects

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was ....(1)............ . I was crying when I left my mother. My teacher asked me to sit next to a boy. The teacher was very ....(2)............. Then, we studied many ....(3)............ and played games. I was ....(4)............ at the end of the day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

My name is Ola. I remember my first day of school. I was seven years old. I lived in Alexandria. I was very nervous and I didn't want to go to school. I like staying at home with my family. I put on a red T-shirt and gray pants. I met my new friend who is called Basma. The next day, I wasn't nervous, and I wanted to see my new friend.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) Ola's first day of school
b) Ola's wedding
c) Ola's birthday
d) Ola's picnic

2 Ola was .... years old when she went to school.

a) five
b) ten
c) six
d) seven

Answer the following questions:

3 Where did Ola live?

....

4 Why Ola was very nervous?

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 1

i remember my first day of school

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

"My town then and now"

gas cars – shopping mall – noisy

....

....

....

....

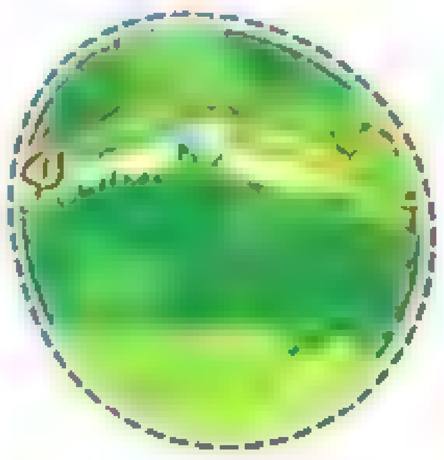
Unit 7 REVIEW

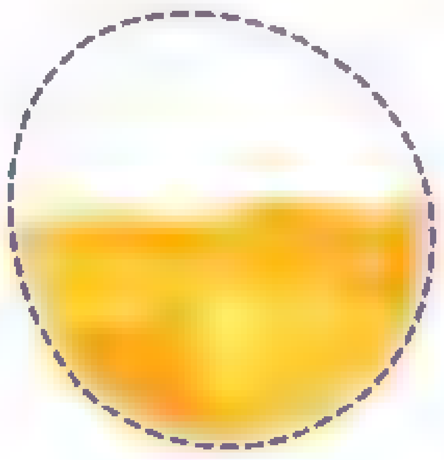
Vocabulary


city


building

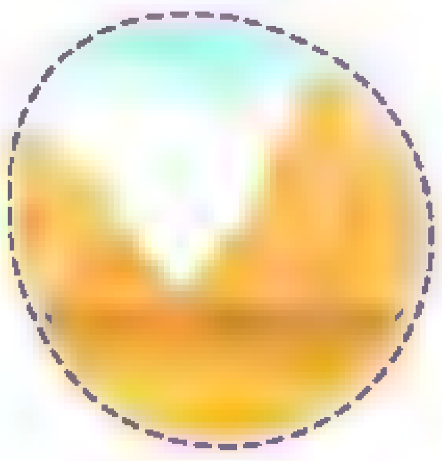

river


forest


desert


village


oasis


mountain

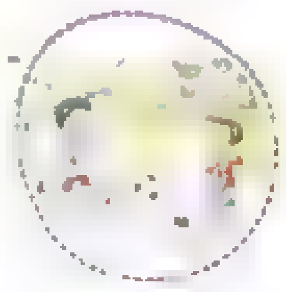
Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

1. Regular verbs:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + (ed/d/ied)... .

The children played football.



2. Irregular verbs:

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

The village was quiet.



Yes/No question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.

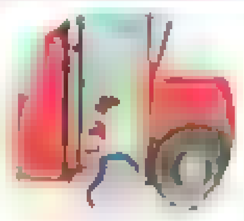


A: Did you play football?
B: Yes, I did.

Wh- question:

A: Question word	did	subject	(inf.) مصدر الفعل...?
B: Subject (الفاعل)		التصريف الثانى للفعل	

A: How did you go to school?
B: I went by bus.



Pronunciation

[illegible]	/i:/	/aɪ/	/əʊ/
gave	see	my	no
eight	pleased	bright	hole
wait	seeds	lights	know
train	eating	why	go
rain	me	delighted	slow
		excited	smoke
		life	
		mice	

Unit 7 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

مبنى	....	مدينة	....
غابة	....	نهر	....
قرية	....	صحراء	....
جبل	....	واحة	....

Lesson 2

شاحنات	....	يتساءل	....
حفر	....	يسحب	....
دفن	....	فضولى	....
ذكريات	....	متحمس	....

Lesson 3

ينتظر	....	دخان	....
ثمانية	....	أعطى	....
مسرور	....	قطار	....
يأكل	....	يرى	....
ملكى	....	بذور	....
أضواء	....	سبب	....
مبتهج	....	لامع	....
وقت	....	لماذا	....
يذهب	....	فئران	....
بطىء	....	حياة	....
يعرف	....		....

Lessons 4 & 5

بوابة	....	حقيبة ظهر	....
مول تجارى	....	عصبى/متوتر	....
الحى	....	الكهرباء	....
فصل دراسى	....	حديث	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about the Nile:

- The Nile is + صفة يتميز بها نهر النيل مثل أنه أطول نهر
- It is + طول نهر النيل
- It has + عدد الفروع فى مصر
- The Nile helps + اذكر كيف يساعد نهر النيل فى الحياة فى مصر

"The Nile"

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is 6,670 kilometers long. It has two branches in Egypt. The Nile helps farmers grow their plants. Many types of fish can live in the Nile.

How to write about your first day at school:

- I was + عمرك فى أول يوم دراسى
- I was + وصف مشاعرك فى أول يوم دراسى
- I put on + وصف الزى المدرسى وألوانه
- I met + اسم أول صديق قابلته
- The next day, كيف كنت فى اليوم التالى

"My first day of school"

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous and didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt and gray pants. I met my new friend who is called Ali. The next day, I wasn't nervous and I wanted to see my new friend.

How to write about your city in the past and now:

- My town was + حالة المدينة فى الماضى
  Now, it's + حالة المدينة الآن
- There were + عدد السيارات فى الماضى
  Now, there are + عدد السيارات الآن
- We had + اختراعات قديمة فى الماضى
  Now we have + اختراعات حديثة

"My town"

My town was very quiet in the past. Now it's busy and there are a lot of people. We had no cars in the past. Now, there are many cars and trucks. We had gas cars in the past. They were noisy. Now we have electric cars. They are much quieter.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

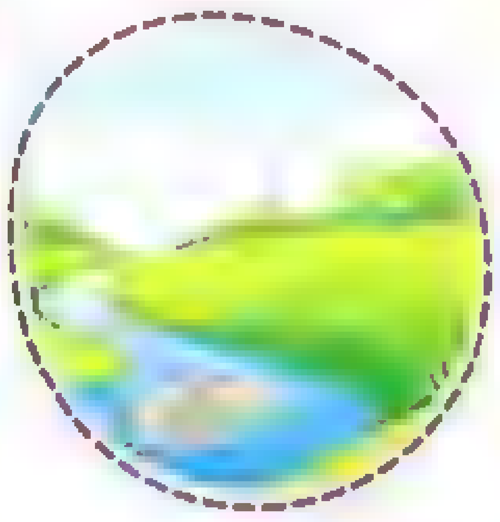
Unit 7 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

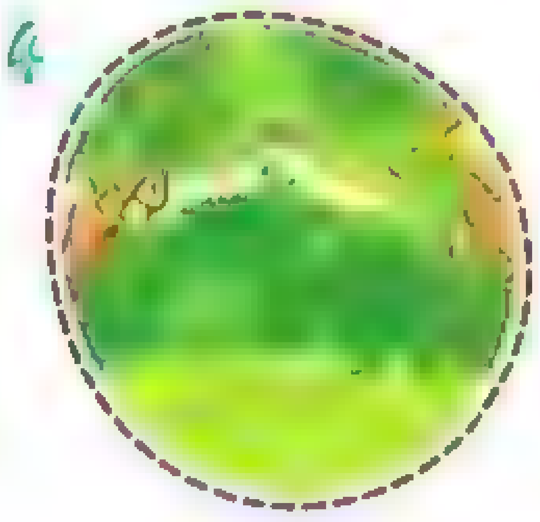
1 Look and write:

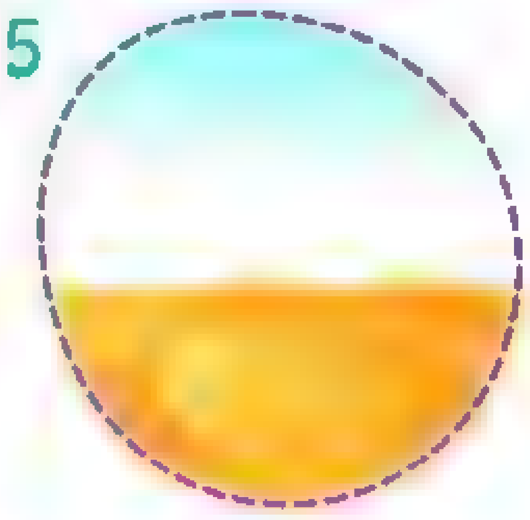
building – city – desert – forest – mountain – oasis – river – village

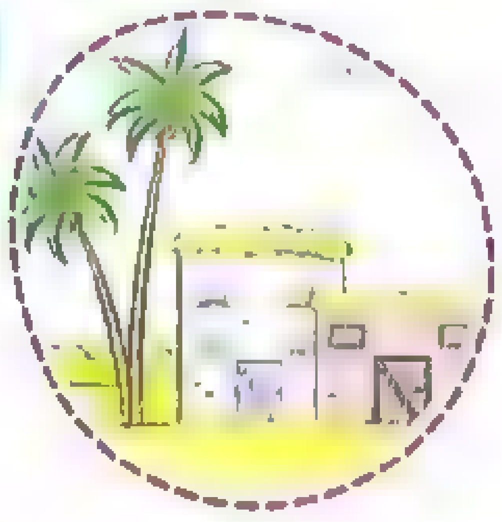
1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....

5  ....

6  ....

7  ....

8  ....

2 Complete the sentences about the story:

1 Grandpa's village .... very quiet. Now, there .... a lot of people.

2 There .... no cars in the past. Now, there .... a lot of trucks and cars.

3 Grandpa .... eight years old when he buried the box of memories. Now, Grandpa .... very old.



3 Write some notes about your first day of school:

1 What did you wear? ....

2 How did you feel? ....

3 Was the teacher kind? ....

4 Did you like your first day? ....

5 Did you want to go back to school the next day? ....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

1 The Nile is the .... river in the world.

(a. longest – b. shortest – c. tallest – d. biggest)

2 It is like traveling to the center of the ....

(a. Earth – b. Mars – c. Jupiter – d. Venus)

3 The Nile has .... branches in Egypt.

(a. two – b. three – c. four – d. five)

4 The Nile is home to many ....

(a. insects – b. birds – c. pandas – d. tigers)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1 I live in a small .... in the countryside.

a) village b) mountain c) forest d) city

2 The country mouse lives in a .... in the ground.

a) hole b) mountain c) city d) train

3 I don't think there are any .... in the desert.

a) mountains b) oasis c) trees d) sand

4 Grandpa .... the box when he was eight.

a) buried b) pulled c) dug d) looked

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 4

is – was – digging – metal – curious

Grandpa walked to the tree. He looked at the ground. Then he started ....(1)............ . He pulled out an old, ...(2)............ box. He had a big smile on his face and he looked excited. Grandpa ....(3)............ eight years old when he buried the box. He sat down and opened the box. I was very ....(4)............ to know what's inside it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

Hello! My name is Ali. I am in grade five. I live in a big city with my family. The city has a lot of pretty, bright lights, but smoke and noise are everywhere. In summer, we visit our grandpa in the country. It is always quiet and clean. There are a lot of trees and grass. Life is slow in the country. There aren't many cars or noise. We love the country more than the city.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ali lives in a big .... with his family.

a) city b) village c) mountain d) valley

2 The underlined word "pretty" means ....

a) noisy b) quiet c) beautiful d) calm

Answer the following questions:

3 How is life in the country? ....

4 Summarize the general idea of the text in two sentences. ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 We (play) .... football on the street yesterday.

2 (Do) .... you visit your friend last week?

3 There (aren't) .... many cars in the past.

4 She (doesn't) .... watch television yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 1

How many branches does the nile have

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المعصرة التعليمية

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الآتية:

SB

"My first day at grade four"

nervous – teacher

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	[illegible]	Well done

Unit 7 AL-AZHAR CORNER

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The Nile is the .... river in the world.
(shortest – tallest – longest)

2 The Nile has .... branches in Egypt.
(two – three – four)

3 The Nile brings .... to the whole of Egypt.
(life – food – air)

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

next – did – nervous – excited

Adel : How .... you feel on your first day of school?

Sami : I was very ....

Adel : What happened the .... day?

Sami : I wasn't nervous. I was ....

3 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, Hani visited his grandpa in Tanta where he lives. He took the train there. When he arrived, Grandpa met him at the train station. Hani's grandpa was very happy and excited. He showed Hani around the city. Grandpa told Hani that Tanta was very quiet when he was young. There weren't many cars or shops. Now life is different. There are many cars on the roads. There are many shops and big shopping malls, too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hani took the (car – taxi – train) to Tanta.

2 Hani's grandpa was very (sad – happy – tired) and excited.

3 Tanta was very (slow – quiet – noisy).

Answer the following questions:

4 Where did Grandpa meet Hani?

....

5 How is life now in Tanta?

....

Unit 8

We had fun

قضينا وقتًا ممتعًا



Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Al-Azhar | Answers 100%

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:** — بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - find out how to use quantifiers. — يكتشف كيفية استخدام محددات الكميات.
  - practice using past simple irregular verbs. — يتدرب على استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة.
  - discuss and write about festivals. — يناقش ويكتب عن الاحتفالات.
  - read about Egyptian festivals and celebrations. — يقرأ عن المهرجانات المصرية والاحتفالات.
  - write about a special day. — يكتب عن يوم مميز.

- In Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia, there is a famous dish called Couscous. It is semolina with meat and/or vegetables. It can also be eaten with sugar or as a dessert.

- People eat different foods to celebrate festivals. Biriyani is a popular rice dish from South Asia. Maqluba is popular in Middle Eastern countries and consists of fried vegetables, meat, and rice cooked together in a pot which is then * flipped upside down.

* flipped upside down — انقلبت رأسًا على عقب

Study

Lesson 1
Food and Drinks
أطعمة ومشروبات

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

Quantifiers: محددات الكمية:

a packet of عبوة من



a packet of cookies
عبوة من البسكويت (الكوكيز)

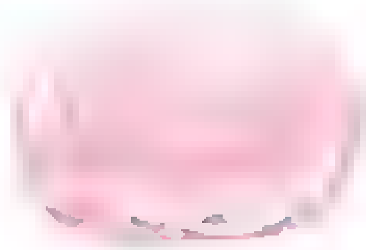


a packet of candies
عبوة من الحلوى

a bar of قالب من



a bar of chocolate
قالب من الشوكولاتة



a bar of soap
قالب من الصابون

a carton of علبة من



a carton of juice
علبة من العصير

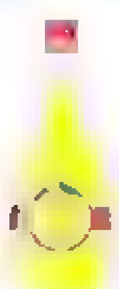


a carton of milk
علبة من اللبن

a bottle of زجاجة من

a bottle of water
زجاجة من المياه

a bottle of milk
زجاجة من اللبن



a bottle of lemonade
زجاجة من عصير الليمون

a slice of شريحة من



a slice of cake
شريحة من الكيك

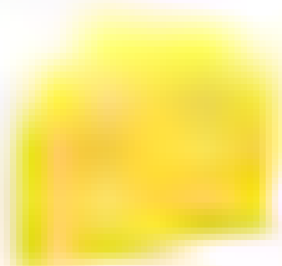


a slice of pizza
شريحة من البيتزا



a slice of meat
شريحة من اللحم

a piece of قطعة من



a piece of cheese
قطعة من الجبن



a piece of bread
قطعة من الخبز

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ck) ينطقان /k/ (ك) كما في (packet).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما في (piece)/ (slice)/ (juice).

Extra vocabulary

party	حفلة	only	فقط
maybe	ربما	thirsty (adj.)	عطشان
well	حسنًا	all	كل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
have	يملك/ يتناول	had	eat	يأكل	ate
drink	يشرب	drank	think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought

Expressions and Phrases

have fun	يستمتع	Thank you.	شكراً لك.
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	look a bit green	يبدو مريضًا
feel well	يشعر بحالة جيدة	Oh, dear.	يا عزيزى
too much	كثيرًا جدًّا	Anything else?	أى شىء آخر؟
Is that all?	هل هذا كل شىء؟	That's terrible!	هذا مريع!
That's why ...	لهذا ...	Oh, no!	أوه لا!

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 She had two (cartons – bottles – bars – packets) of cookies.

2 Can I have a (slice – piece – bottle – bar) of water, please?

3 Nadia bought three (bars – bottles – slices – cartons) of soap yesterday.

4 It's unhealthy to eat too many (bottles – packets – slices – cartons) of cake.

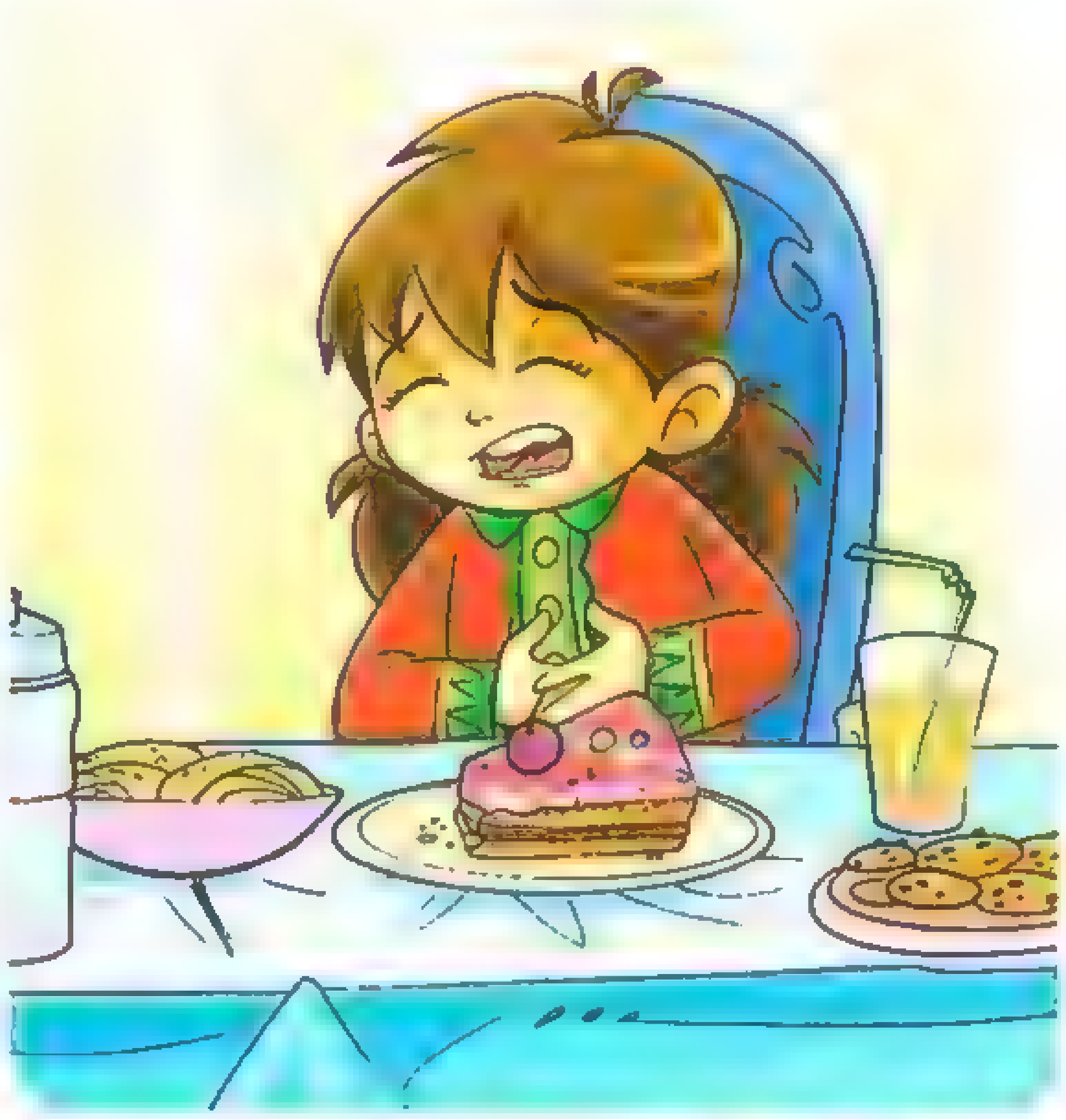
5 I had two pieces of (meat – chicken – bread – pizza) for breakfast.

6 I bought a carton of (meat – milk – cookies – candies) for my mum.

Listening script

Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Did you have fun at the party, Reem? هل استمتعتِ بالحفلة يا ريم؟

Yes, thank you. نعم ، شكرًا لك.

What's the matter? You look a bit green. ما الأمر؟ تبدين مريضة قليلًا.

Hmm, I don't feel well. حسنًا ، لا أشعر أنني بحالة جيدة.

Oh, dear. Did you eat too much? يا عزيزتي. هل أكلتِ كثيرًا؟

I only had a slice of cake. لقد تناولت فقط شريحة من الكعكة.

Anything else? هل من شيء آخر؟

No.... I drank some juice. لا... شربت بعض العصير.

Some juice? بعض العصير؟

Well, a carton of juice. حسنًا، علبة من العصير.

Is that all?
هل هذا كل شيء؟

Maybe a bar of chocolate, only a small one... and a piece of cheese.
ربما قالب من الشوكولاتة ، واحد فقط صغير... وقطعة من الجبن.

Cheese and chocolate? That's horrible! الجبن والشوكولاتة؟ هذا فظيع!



That's why I ate some cookies.
لهذا أكلت بعض البسكويت.

How many cookies did you eat?
كم عدد رقائق البسكويت التي أكلتها؟

A ... packet ... of cookies. عبوة ... من البسكويت.

Oh, no! أوه لا!

I was thirsty after all that food, so I had a bottle of water.
كنت عطشانة بعد كل هذا الطعام ، لذلك تناولت زجاجة من المياه.

Vocabulary Check

Some words can be both a verb (v.) or a noun (n.):

e.g. slice (v.) يقطع



slice (n.) شريحـة



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 We went to the .... and bought many things.
(a. hospital – b. park – c. school – d. supermarket)

2 We bought five packets of ....
(a. cookies – b. water – c. juice – d. pizza)

3 We bought six .... of orange juice.
(a. cartons – b. bars – c. pieces – d. slices)

4 We bought ten .... of pizza.
(a. bottles – b. slices – c. packets – d. pieces)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1 Amr is very thirsty. He wants a .... of water.

a) carton b) packet c) slice d) bottle

2 I had a .... of cheese for breakfast.

a) packet b) piece c) bottle d) carton

3 Dalia likes sweets so much. She had a bar of ....

a) cola b) bread c) chocolate d) cake

4 Reem feels sick. She looks a bit ....

a) yellow b) green c) red d) pink

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

supermarket – bottles – slices – soap – bought

Nada and her family went to the ....(1)......... yesterday at night. They ....(2)......... many things. Nada bought two ....(3)......... of milk. Nada's mom bought two bars of ....(4)............, two pieces of cheese and a packet of cookies.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Marwa went to her friend's Sara birthday party yesterday. She had fun at the party. There was a big table with many types of foods on it. Marwa was hungry. She ate two slices of cake and a carton of mango juice. But the cookies looked delicious, and Marwa wanted to try them. She ate a packet of cookies and drank a bottle of water because she felt thirsty. On her way home, Marwa didn't feel well. She looked a bit green.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Marwa went to a/an .... yesterday.

a) park b) club c) birthday party d) class

2 The underlined expression "looked a bit green" means ....

a) excited b) happy c) sick d) fun

Answer the following questions:

3 What did Marwa eat at the birthday party?

....

4 Why didn't Marwa feel well?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 I had two (bottle) .... of water.

2 (Does) .... she have fun at the party yesterday?

3 They had two packets of (cookie) ....

4 I (drink) .... some juice yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

how much cake did you eat, reem?

....

Study 5

Lesson 2

A poem

قصيدة شعر

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Vocabulary

poem	قصيدة شعر	octopus	أخطبوط	jellyfish	قنديل البحر

Extra vocabulary

trip	رحلة قصيرة	last weekend	عطلة الأسبوع الماضى	Damietta	دمياط
deep (adj.)	عميق	lovely (adj.)	جميل	dish	طبق/ وجبة
meal	وجبة	yogurt	زبادى	dessert	حلوى
frozen (adj.)	مجمد	photos	صور	again	مرة أخرى
soon	قريبًا	video	فيديو	movie	فيلم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	remember	يتذكر	remembered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
catch	يمسك	caught	have	يحصل على/ يملك	had
sing	يغنى	sang	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

by the sea	بجانب البحر	make into	يحول
a day to remember	يوم للذكرى	tasted horrible!	مذاقها سيئ للغاية!

Vocabulary Chart

بعض الكلمات متشابهة فى النطق لكنها تختلف فى المعنى والهجاء.

e.g.
1. see يرى / sea بحر
2. by بواسطة / bye إلى اللقاء
3. too أيضًا / two اثنان
4. coat بالطو / caught مسك
5. desert صحراء / dessert حلوى

القافية: تطابق الصوت بين نهاية الكلمات فى نهايات السطور فى القصيدة.

e.g.
1. blue أزرق / too أيضًا
2. song أغنية / long طويل

Our Trip to the Sea

رحلتنا إلى البحر

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see
Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea.
We swam in the water, which was deep and blue.
We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!



Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into
a lovely dish!
We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert.
Bananas, apples, and frozen yogurt.



We saw some old photos and sang a song,
But time was short. The day wasn't long.
We felt happy. It was a day to remember.
We will go again soon, early September!

- الأسبوع الماضى ذهبنا إلى دمياط لنرى جدتنا وجدنا، اللذين يعيشان بجانب البحر.
سبحنا فى المياه، التى كانت عميقة وزرقاء.
رأينا الكثير من السمك و أخطبوطًا أيضًا.

- اصطاد جدى سمكة، وحولتها جدتى إلى وجبة لذيذة.
تناولنا الوجبة وحلوى صحية.
موز، تفاح وزبادى مجمد.

- رأينا صورًا قديمة وغنينا أغنية، ولكن الوقت كان قصيرًا. اليوم لم يكن طويلًا.
شعرنا بالسعادة. لقد كان يومًا للذكرى.
سوف نذهب هناك مرة أخرى قريبًا، فى سبتمبر القادم.

Check point

1 When did they go to Damietta?

....

2 Summarize the text in three sentences.

....

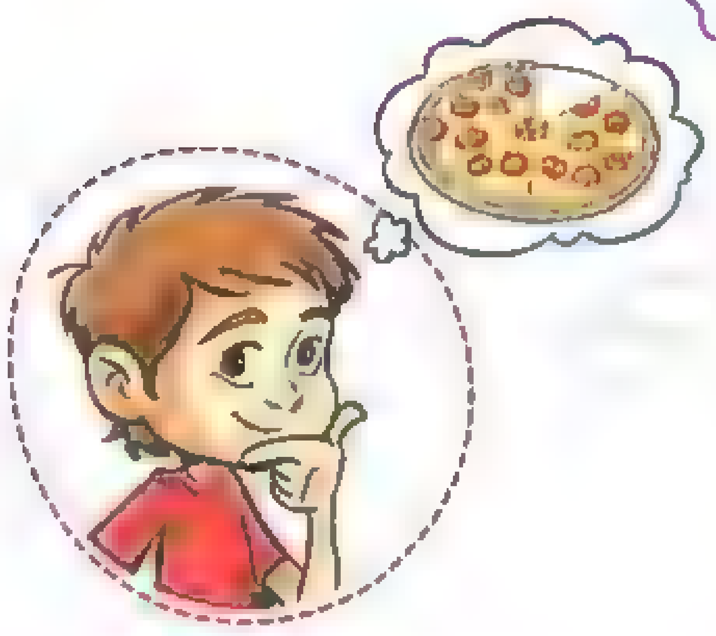
B Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular Verbs

زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة:

Subject فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل ....



I ate pizza yesterday.

أكلت بيتزا أمس.

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:

Subject فاعل + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .



I didn't have ice cream yesterday.

لم أتناول الآيس كريم أمس.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

A : Question word	did	subject	(inf.) مصدر الفعل...?
B : Subject (الفاعل) التصريف الثانى للفعل........... .			



What did you do last weekend?

ماذا فعلت فى عطلة الأسبوع الماضى؟



I swam in the sea.

سبحت فى البحر.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
buy	يشترى	bought	forget	ينسى	forgot
fly	يطير	flew	cut	يقطع	cut
hear	يسمع	heard	come	يأتى	came
give	يعطى	gave	say	يقول	said
write	يكتب	wrote	run	يجرى	ran
throw	يرمى	threw	have	يملك	had
feel	يشعر	felt	sing	يغنى	sang
see	يرى	saw	make	يصنع	made
go	يذهب	went	swim	يعوم	swam
am/is	يكون	was	are	يكونوا	were
catch	يمسك	caught	drink	يشرب	drank

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 What (do – did – does – doing) you do yesterday?
2 They (fly – flying – flew – flies) their kites last week.
3 My grandparents (came – come – comes – coming) to visit us yesterday.
4 What did you (drink – drinking – drank – drinks) at the party yesterday?
5 I (watch – watched – watches – watching) a great movie last night. SB
6 Grandpa (caught – catching – catches – catch) an octopus last weekend.

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 Grandma and Grandma live by the ....

(a. river – b. lake – c. sea – d. oasis)

2 The water was deep and ....

(a. green – b. blue – c. yellow – d. pink)

3 Grandpa caught a ....

(a. horse – b. cow – c. cat – d. fish)

4 We had a healthy ....

(a. dessert – b. lunch – c. breakfast – d. meal)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 Bananas and frozen yogurt are healthy ....

a) fish b) vegetables c) desserts d) deserts

2 We .... some old photos. They were amazing.

a) see b) saw c) seeing d) sees

3 I had my swimming test yesterday. I .... 50 meters.

a) swims b) swim c) swam d) swimming

4 They sang a .... and felt excited.

a) fish b) song c) dish d) photo

5 The day .... too long on the beach yesterday.

a) is b) was c) are d) were

6 I .... my grandmother last week.

a) visit b) visited c) visits d) visiting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

fish – swam – caught – excited – sang

My family spent a nice day at the beach last week. We ....(1)............ in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of ....(2)............, and an octopus, too. Grandpa ....(3)............ a big fish which my grandma made into a lovely dish. We were very happy and ....(4)............

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

....
5

1 We (go) .... last month to Damietta.

2 Where (do) .... you go last weekend?

3 Yesterday (is) .... a day to remember.

4 I (visit) .... my grandma last week.

5 I (don't) .... bake a cake yesterday.

5 Punctuate the following:

....
2

1 There s a sea in damietta.

....

2 What did you play yesterday

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

....
5

"A trip to the sea"

- Where did you go?
- What did you eat?
- How did you go?

....

....

....

....

Study

Lesson 3
CLIL: Social studies

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر	sunset	غروب الشمس
Islamic month	شهر هجري	kahk	كعك
Eid Mubarak	عيد مبارك / عيد سعيد	mosque	مسجد
Sham El-Nessim	عيد شم النسيم	Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي

Extra vocabulary

festival	احتفال/عيد	article	مقالة
American (adj.)	أمريكي	information	معلومات
Muslim	مُسلم	Ramadan	شهر رمضان
until	حتى	different (adj.)	مختلف
Shawwal	شهر شوال	sugar	سكر
honey	عسل	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ
nuts	مكسرات	bakery	مخبز
celebration	احتفال	oldest (adj.)	أقدم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	fast	يصوم	fasted
want	يريد	wanted	help	يساعد	helped
happen	يحدث	happened	start	يبدأ	started
pray	يصلي	prayed			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
teach	يُدرِّس	taught	drink	يشرب	drank
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	can	يستطيع	could
say	يقول	said	spend	يقضي	spent

Expressions and Phrases

is called	يُدعى / يُسمى	during the day	أثناء النهار
think about	يفكر بـ ...	did well	أدى جيدًا
do better	يؤدي بشكل أفضل	spend time	يقضي وقتًا

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.

- عيد الفطر هو عيد إسلامى.

- Eid happens in the first day of 10th Islamic month called Shawwal.

- يكون العيد فى اليوم الأول من الشهر الهجرى العاشر الذى يسمى شوال.

- Kahk are delicious cookies.

- الكعك هو بسكويت لذيذ.

- People go to the mosque and spend time with their friends.

- يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويقضون الوقت مع أصدقائهم.

Vocabulary Check

- أسماء الأيام والأشهر والعطلات هى أسماء علم ، لذا يجب أن تكتبها بأحرف كبيرة.

e.g. Eid Al-Fitr Shawwal Ramadan

- لا يمكن ترجمة بعض الكلمات العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية. يتم نطقها وكتابتها بنفس طريقة نطقها باللغة العربية.

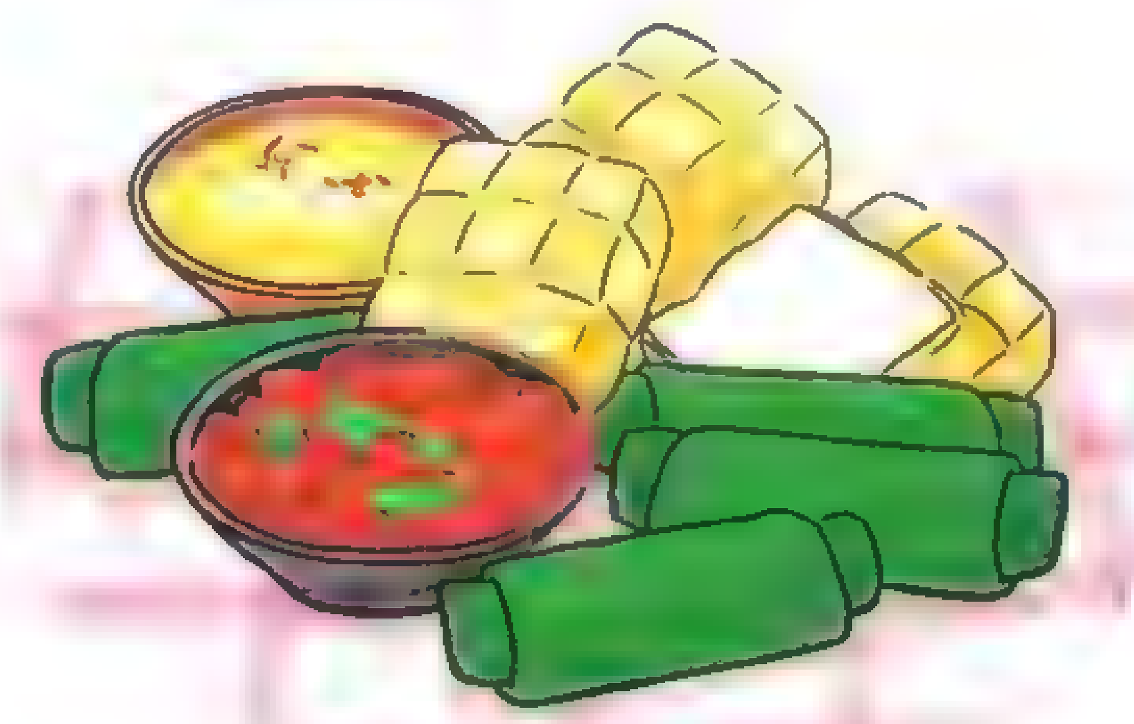
e.g. Eid Al-Fitr عيد الفطر - Ramadan شهر رمضان - Shawwal شهر شوال - kahk كحك

Eid Mubarak عيد مبارك - Sham El-Nessim شم النسيم



I can find it out: People in other countries mainly celebrate Eid Al-Fitr by spending time exchanging gifts and visiting friends and family. Eating sweets is also a common way of celebrating Eid Al-Fitr.

يحتفل الناس فى البلدان الأخرى بعيد الفطر بشكل أساسى من خلال قضاء الوقت فى تبادل الهدايا وزيارة الأصدقاء والعائلة. تناول الحلويات أيضًا طريقة شائعة للاحتفال بعيد الفطر.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

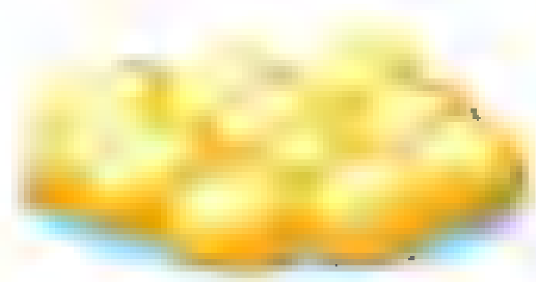
Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt

عيد الفطر فى مصر



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month[1] before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during[2] the day. This means[3] they don't eat or drink until sunset.

In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people.





عيد الفطر عيد إسلامى. الشهر الذى يسبق العيد هو شهر رمضان. يصوم الكثير من المسلمين نهارًا فى رمضان. هذا يعنى أنهم لا يأكلون أو يشربون حتى الغروب.

فى شهر رمضان، يفكر الناس فى العام الماضى. يفكرون فى الأشياء التى قاموا بعملها بشكل جيد والأشياء التى يريدون أن يقوموا بها بشكل أفضل. إنه أيضًا وقت لمساعدة الآخرين.

(1)	شهر
(2)	أثناء
(3)	يعنى
(4)	سؤال

When is Eid Al-Fitr?

متى يكون عيد الفطر؟

That's a very good question[4]! It's different every year. Eid happens in the first day of the 10^{th} Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon.

هذا سؤال جيد جدًا! إنه يختلف من سنة لأخرى. يصادف العيد اليوم الأول من الشهر العاشر (شوال) من السنة الهجرية. يبدأ الشهر مع ظهور الهلال.

Lots of kahk!

الكثير من الكعك!

Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk, but you can buy them from a bakery, too.

الكعك هو بسكويت (كوكيز) لذيذة. يأكل الناس الكعك للاحتفال. يحتوى الكعك على مكسرات وسكر وعسل. تصنع العديد من العائلات الكعك ولكن يمكنك شراؤه من المخبز، أيضًا.

"Eid Mubarak"

عيد مبارك

Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate!

العيد هو وقت الاحتفال والسعادة. يقول الناس "عيد مبارك" لأصدقائهم. يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويقضون الوقت مع عائلاتهم. يأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا ويحتفلون!

Check point

1 What's Eid Al-Fitr?

....

2 How do people celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?

....

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Writing about a festival

Tip!

للكتابة عن أحد الأحتفالات:
1. ابدأ بجملة عامة تصف الاحتفال.
2. اكتب الأفكار فى شكل شبكة.
3. اكتب الفقرة وراجع الـ spelling, grammar, and punctuation.

Sham El-Nessim

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival. It comes the day after Coptic[1] Easter[2].

شم النسيم هو أقدم احتفال مصرى. إنه يأتى فى اليوم التالى لعيد الفصح.



(1) قبطى

(2) عيد الفصح

When is it?

متى يكون؟

It comes the day after Coptic Easter.

إنه يأتى فى اليوم التالى لعيد الفصح.

What do people do?

ماذا يفعل الناس به؟

People go to the parks and gardens with their families.

يذهب الناس إلى المتنزهات والحدائق مع عائلاتهم.

Sham El-Nessim

شم النسيم

What do people eat?

ماذا يأكل الناس؟

People eat salted fish, onions and also colored eggs.

يأكل الناس السمك المملح والبصل والبيض الملون.

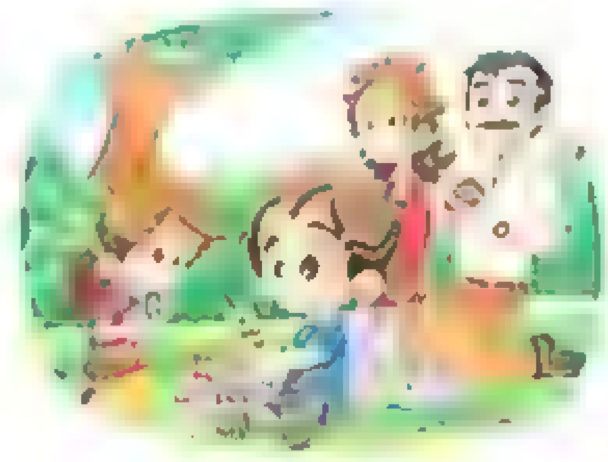
Why do you like it?

لماذا تحبه؟

I like Sham El-Nessim because I always have picnics with my family and we have a great time together.

أحب شم النسيم لأننى أقوم دائمًا بالنزهات مع عائلتى ونقضى وقتًا ممتعًا معًا.

"Sham El-Nessim"



Sham El-Nessim is the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. Children go to the parks and play. People go to the gardens with their families. They eat salted fish, onions, and also colored eggs. I like Sham El-Nessim because I always have picnics with my family and we have a great time together.

شم النسيم هو أقدم احتفال مصري. ويأتى بعد يوم من عيد الفصح القبطي. يذهب الأطفال إلى الحدائق ويلعبون. يذهب الناس إلى الحدائق مع عائلاتهم. يأكلون السمك المملح والبصل والبيض الملون أيضًا. أحب شم النسيم لأننى أقوم دائماً بالنزهات مع عائلتى ونقضى وقتًا ممتعًا معًا.

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 Eid comes after the month of ....
(a. August – b. June – c. Ramadan – d. October)

2 Kahk are delicious ....
(a. cookies – b. cakes – c. pizzas – d. juice)

3 We go to the .... and spend time with our family.
(a. mosque – b. school – c. shopping mall – d. hospital)

4 We eat .... food.
(a. bad – b. delicious – c. ugly – d. worst)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5

1 Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest ....

a) park　b) festival　c) museum　d) building

2 Kahk are delicious ....

a) cakes　b) cookies　c) candies　d) juice

3 .... is a month when Muslims fast.

a) Shawwal　b) October　c) January　d) Ramadan

4 Muslims pray in the ....

a) bakery　b) park　c) mosque　d) garden

5 Eid Al-Fitr is a festival when we eat ....

a) noodles　b) meat　c) salted fish　d) kahk

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

families – cookies – Mubarak – celebrate – mosque

People celebrate Eid Al-Fitr in different ways. People say "Eid ....(1)........... " to their friends and family. People also go to the ....(2)........... and spend time with their ....(3)........... . They eat delicious food and they eat kahk, too. Kahk are delicious ....(4)........... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Last weekend, we visited my grandparents in a village near Luxor. We went to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. We went to the mosque to pray and say "Eid Mubarak" to our friends. Grandma made delicious kahk with nuts. It was really delicious. We ate a lot of kahk and drank orange juice. In the evening, we went to visit family members and close friends. It was a nice weekend.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the passage is about ....

a) Sham El-Nessim   b) Eid Al-Fitr
c) Coptic Easter   d) Eid Al-Adha

2 The underlined adjective "delicious" is the opposite of ....

a) bad   b) nice   c) good   d) amazing

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do people say in Eid Al-Fitr?

....

4 What did they do in the evening?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 sham El-Nessim is Egypt s oldest festival.

....

2 eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

SB

"Sham El-Nessim festival"

- When does it come?
- How do you celebrate it?
- Why do you like it?

....

....

....

....

Study

Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Main Vocabulary

great-grandma	والدة الجدة	picnic	نزهة	Christmas tree	شجرة الكريسماس

Extra vocabulary

birthday	عيد ميلاد	special (adj.)	مميز
party	حفلة	cousins	أولاد العم
aunt	عمة / خالة	uncle	عم / خال
huge (adj.)	ضخم	salad	سلطة
bread	خبز	cookies	بسكويت (كوكيز)
slice	شريحة	bottle	زجاجة
whole	كل	countries	دول
Christmas	عيد الكريسماس	new life	حياة جديدة
lights	أضواء	colored (adj.)	ملون

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — **أفعـــال منتظمـة**

Present		Past	Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	decorate	يزين	decorated
represent	يمثل	represented	play	يلعب	played

Irregular verbs — **أفعال غير منتظمة**

Present		Past	Present		Past
eat	يأكل	ate	run	يجري	ran
sing	يغني	sang	throw	يلقي (يرمي)	threw

Expressions and Phrases

two years ago	منذ سنتين	come together	يجتمعون سويًّا
lots of	الكثير من	all afternoon	طوال فترة بعد الظهر
had fun	استمتع		

A Writing

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Great-grandma's birthday عيد ميلاد والدة الجدة

What was the special day?



Two years ago, we had a very special party.
My great-grandma was 90 years old!

منذ سنتين، كان لدينا حفل مميز جدًّا. كان عمر والدة جدتي ٩٠ عامًا!

Who was at the party?



All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit.

اجتمعت كل العائلة لتحتفل. أتى كل أبناء عمى، عماتى وأعمامى. قمنا بعمل نزهة كبيرة فى حديقة عمتى. كان يوجد الكثير من الطعام: سلطة، لحم، سمك، خبز، كيك (تورت)، بسكويت (كوكيز)، وفاكهة.

What did the writer eat and drink?

I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

تناولت قطعة كبيرة من كيكة الشوكولاتة وشربت زجاجة من عصير البرتقال. تناولت أيضًا بعض السلطة والفاكهة.

What did the writer do?

I played games with my cousins all afternoon. We ran. We threw a ball. We sang "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

لعبت مع أبناء عمى فى فترة بعد الظهيرة. جرينا. ورمينا الكرة. وقمنا بغناء «عيد ميلاد سعيد» لوالدة جدتى.

Why was it a special day?

It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy. She liked seeing the whole family. We all had fun.

كان يومًا مميزًا جدًّا لأن والدة جدتى كانت سعيدة للغاية. إنها تحب أن ترى العائلة بأكملها. لقد استمتعنا جميعًا.

Check point

1 Why was it a special day? ....

2 Who was at the party? ....

B Project



In many countries, people decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the tree with lights, colored balls, and stars.

فى العديد من البلدان، يزين الناس أشجار الكريسماس فى عيد الميلاد. هذه الأشجار دائمًا خضراء. تمثل الأشجار حياة جديدة.

يزين الناس الشجرة بالأضواء والكُرات الملونة والنجوم.

Check point

1 What color are Christmas trees?

....

2 What do Christmas trees represent?

....

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 My great .... was 90 years old.

(a. grandpa – b. teacher – c. uncle – d. cousin)

2 All my family came together to ....

(a. dance – b. cook – c. swim – d. celebrate)

3 We had a huge picnic in my aunt's ....

(a. living room – b. kitchen – c. bathroom – d. garden)

4 I ate a big slice of chocolate ....

(a. cake – b. pizza – c. chicken – d. meat)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 My great-grandma birthday party was a .... day.

a) bad b) sad c) special d) boring

2 The Christmas tree represents new ....

a) house b) job c) car d) life

3 We had a huge .... in my grandparents' garden.

a) class b) picnic c) exam d) street

4 We .... "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

a) ate b) sang c) decorated d) celebrated

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

celebrate – lights – favorite – garden – green

I'm Mark. I live with my family in a big house in London. We ....(1)............ Christmas every year. We get a big, ...(2)............ tree. We decorate the tree with ....(3)............, colored balls, and stars. It's my ....(4)............ time of the year.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. Eid happens on the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon. People eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. Kahk are delicious cookies. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk, but you can buy them from a bakery, too. People say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The month starts when the people see the new ....
   a) moon   b) sun   c) stars   d) planets

2 Kahk are delicious ....
   a) cakes   b) ice cream   c) cookies   d) nuts

Answer the following questions:

3 When is Eid Al-Fitr?

....

4 Summarize the passage in two sentences.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

christmas trees represent new life

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

SB

"My special day"

- What is your special day?
- Why is it a special day?
- How do you celebrate it?

....

....

....

....

Unit 8 REVIEW

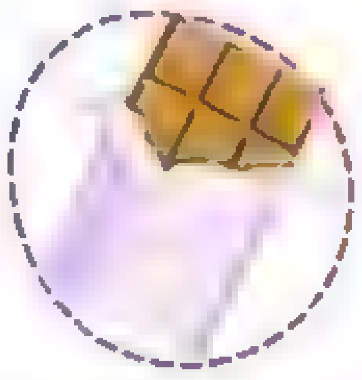


Vocabulary

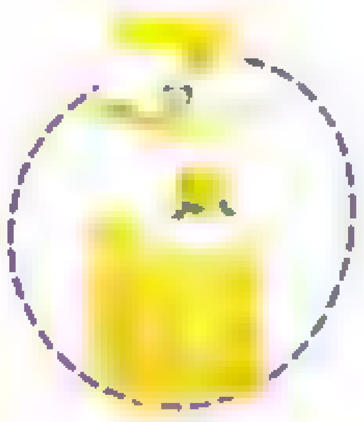
Quantifiers



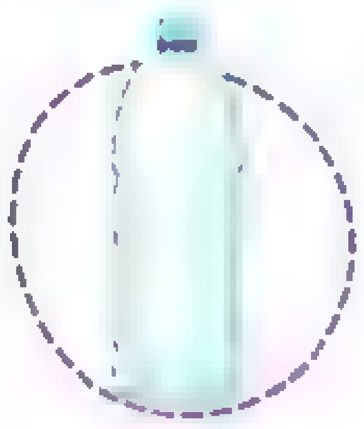
a packet of cookies



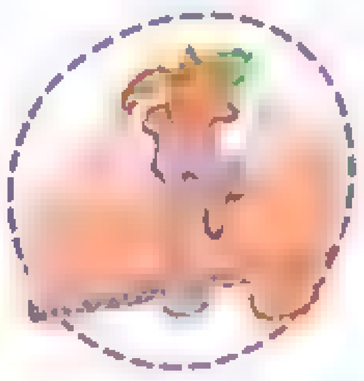
a bar of chocolate



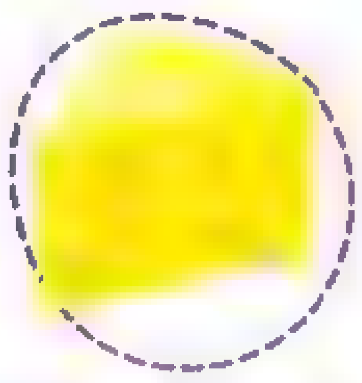
a carton of juice



a bottle of water



a slice of cake



a piece of cheese

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular Verbs:

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
buy	bought	forget	forgot
fly	flew	cut	cut
hear	heard	come	came
give	gave	say	said
write	wrote	run	ran
throw	threw	have	had
feel	felt	sing	sang
see	saw	make	made
go	went	swim	swam
am/is	was	are	were
catch	caught	drink	drank

Social Studies: Egyptian Festivals

Eid Al-Fitr

1 **What is it?**
Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.

2 **When is it?**
Eid Al-Fitr happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month called Shawwal.

3 **How do people celebrate it?**
They eat lots of kahk, say "Eid Mubarak", go to mosque and spend time with their families.

Sham El-Nessim

1 **What is it?**
It's the oldest Egyptian festival.

2 **When is it?**
It comes the day after Coptic Easter.

3 **How do people celebrate it?**
People eat salted fish and colored eggs. They have picnics with their families.

Unit : CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

قالب شكولاتة	....	زجاجة مياه	....
قطعة جبنة	....	عبوة بسكويت (كوكيز)	....
علبة عصير	....	شريحة كيك	....

Lesson 2

أخطبوط	....	قنديل البحر	....
زبادى	....	صور	....

Lesson 3

كعك	....	مسجد	....
احتفال	....	غروب الشمس	....

Lessons 4 & 5

نزهة	....	عيد ميلاد	....
والدة الجدة	....	شجرة الكريسماس	....
حفلة	....	مميز	....
أولاد العم	....	عمة/ خالة	....
عم / خال	....	خبز	....
سلطة	....	بسكويت	....
أضواء	....	ملون	....
حياة جديدة	....	يزين	

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about quantifiers:

1. I / We went to + مكان + وقت
2. There was a lot of food to eat.
3. I had + محدد كمية ونوع الطعام
4. My friend / cousin had + محدد كمية ونوع الطعام

We went to Hana's birthday party last week. There was a lot of food to eat. I had two slices of cake and a carton of juice. My friend Lara had a packet of cookies and a bottle of milk.

How to write about a national festival:

1. What is the festival?
2. When is the festival?
3. How do people celebrate it?

Sham El-Nessim is the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. People go to the parks with their families to celebrate it. They eat salted fish and colored eggs, too.

How to write about a memory of a special day:

1. Yesterday/ Last week was + اسم مناسبة
2. My whole family / friends came to celebrate.
3. I had + محدد كمية ونوع الأكل
4. I / We + نشاط فى الماضى
5. It was a day to remember.

Yesterday was my Grandma's birthday party. My whole family came to celebrate. I had two slices of the birthday cake and a carton of juice. We played games and sang many songs. It was a day to remember.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

Unit 8 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Look and write:

1 

....

2 

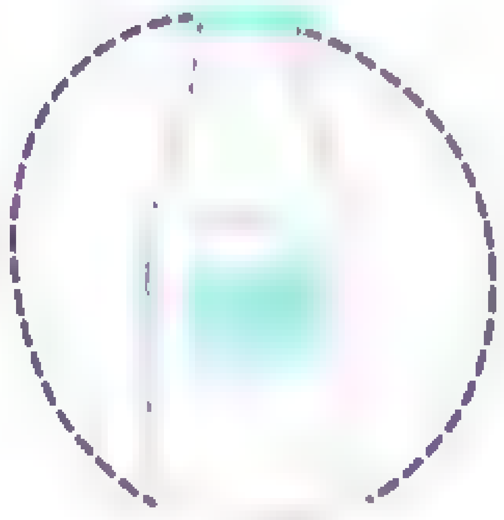
....

3 

....

4 

....

5 

....

6 

....

2 Write past simple form of the verbs:

see		sing	
make		is	
swim		have	
eat		feel	
go		catch	

3 Complete the sentences using the correct verb:

ate – sang – saw – swam – made – went

1 I .... a great movie last night.

2 I .... a cake, but I used salt instead of sugar. It tasted horrible.

3 I had my swimming test yesterday, I .... 50 meters!

4 I .... too much candy. I feel sick.

5 I .... to the beach last year. It was fun!

6 We all .... a song in class today.

Test Yourself 30

UNIT 8

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (6)

1 We went to .... to see my grandparents.
(a. Luxor – b. Alexandria – c. Damietta – d. Aswan)

2 We .... in the water.
(a. played – b. swam – c. cooked – d. danced)

3 My .... caught a big fish.
(a. grandma – b. sister – c. grandpa – d. uncle)

4 Grandma made the .... into a lovely dish.
(a. chicken – b. watermelon – c. fish – d. potato)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 My brother drank a .... of apple juice.

a) bar b) slice c) packet d) carton

2 I ate a .... of pizza.

a) slice b) bottle c) piece d) bar

3 Many Muslims fast in ....

a) Eid Al-Fitr b) Sham El-Nessim c) Ramadan d) Shawwal

4 .... are delicious cookies that people eat in Eid Al-Fitr.

a) Cakes b) Cookies c) Kahk d) Salad

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

cake – cartons – birthday – celebrate – pieces

Yesterday was a special day. It was my father's ....(1)............ . The whole family came together to ....(2)............ . Mom made a nice birthday ....(3)............ . We ate too many slices of cakes and drank many ....(4)............ of apple and orange juice. We sang some songs. We had great fun.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. Every year, we color eggs and give them to our friends and family. At Sham El-Nessim last year, my little sister Mona colored six eggs for our grandparents. Later that day, we went to the park for a picnic. Mom and Grandma made lots of delicious food.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) Sham El-Nessim   b) Coptic Easter
   c) Eid Al-Fitr   d) Ramadan

2 We color .... and give them to our friends and family.
   a) fish   b) eggs   c) food   d) festivals

B Answer the following questions:

3 When does Sham El-Nessim come? ....

4 What did Mom and Grandma make? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 Where (do) .... they go last night?

2 She bought two (bar) .... of chocolate.

3 We celebrated and (sing) .... songs.

4 They (drink) .... one carton of apple juice yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

eid is the time of celebration

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Eid Al-Fitr"

- When is Eid Al-Fitr?
- How do people celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?

....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	[illegible]	Well done

Unit 8 Al-Azhar Corner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 We visited our .... who live by the sea.
(parents – grandparents – friends)

2 We .... a lot of fish.
(swam – ate – saw)

3 The water was .... and blue.
(shallow – deep – dirty)

2 Read and complete the dialog:

feel – much – matter – slice

Wael : What's the ....? You look a bit green.

Reem : Hmm, I don't .... well.

Wael : Did you eat too ....?

Reem : I only had a .... of cake.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 May I have a (slice – bottle – piece) of lemonade, please?

2 Nahla ate some (photos – desserts – songs) and sang with her sister.

3 Don't eat the whole packet of (water – candies – cakes). It's unhealthy.

4 (Do – Does – Did) you have a good time yesterday with your friends, Hana?

5 Habiba (looks – look – looked) a bit green. She didn't feel well.

Unit 9

What makes us special?

ما الذى يجعلنا مميزين؟



Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Al-Azhar | Answers 100%

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - read about party games.
  - explore what makes his/her country special.
  - listen about some unusual festivals around the world.
  - practice more irregular past simple verb forms.
  - learn and say words that end with (-ful).
  - explore how to present information.
  - write an invitation.
  - work in groups to organize a class celebration.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يقرأ عن الألعاب الجماعية.
  - يستكشف ما يجعل دولته مميزة.
  - يستمع إلى بعض المهرجانات الغريبة حول العالم.
  - يتدرب على استخدام المزيد من الأفعال الشاذة فى زمن الماضى.
  - يتعلم ويقول كلمات تنتهى بـ ful.
  - يستكشف كيفية تقديم المعلومات.
  - يكتب دعوة.
  - يعمل فى مجموعات لتنظيم احتفال دراسى.

Did you know?

- Ful medames is a very old dish. *Archaeologists found some Ful Medames in one of the pyramids! It was thousands of years ago.

* Archaeologists علماء الآثار

I can find it out!

- My mom and dad remember many celebrations they had when they were children. They remember Eid Al-Fitr, Eid Al-Adha and the *monetary gifts they had then.

* monetary gifts العيدية

Study

Lesson 1

Games around the world

ألعاب حول العالم

Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

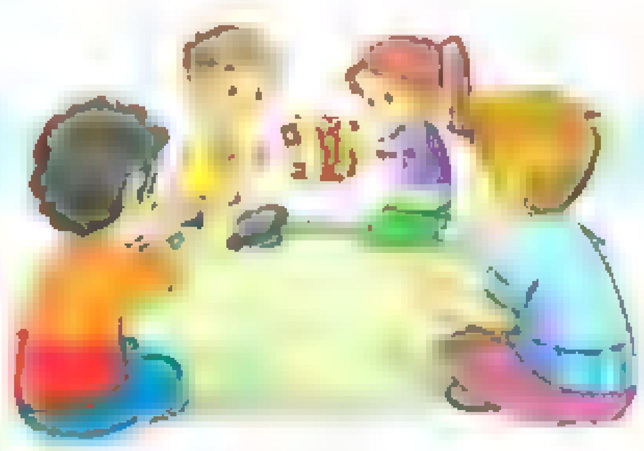
Main vocabulary

Traditional party games:

ألعاب جماعية تقليدية:



Hide and seek
لعبة الغميضة



Pass the parcel
لعبة نقل الطرود



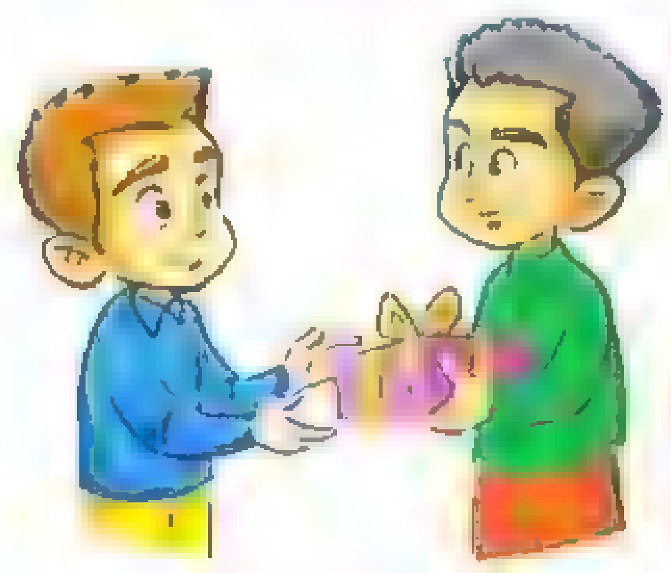
Musical chairs
لعبة الكراسى الموسيقية



play music
تشغل الموسيقى



play games
يلعب الألعاب



give presents
يعطى الهدايا



wrap presents
يغلف الهدايا



open presents
يفتح الهدايا

Extra vocabulary

traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	players	لاعبون	person	شخص
ready (adj.)	جاهز	popular (adj.)	مشهور	exciting (adj.)	شيق/ممتع
wide (adj.)	واسع	winner	فائز	seeker	الباحث

Note

When we play together, we learn to:
have fun
help others
respect rules
listen to others

عندما نلعب سويًا، نتعلم أن:
نستمتع
نساعد الآخرين
نحترم القواعد
نستمع إلى الآخرين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	love	يحب	loved	wrap	يغلف	wrapped
cover	يغطى	covered	stop	يتوقف	stopped	need	يحتاج	needed
join	ينضم	joined	close	يغلق	closed	count	يعد	counted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
sit	يجلس	sat	hold	يمسك	held	keep	يحتفظ بـ ...	kept
hide	يختبئ	hid	become	يصبح	became	catch	يمسك بـ ...	caught

Expressions and Phrases

get together	يجتمعوا سويًا	put out	يضع	run around	يجرى حول
more fun	أكثر متعة	the last one left	الشخص الأخير المتبقى	take off	ينزع



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) تُنطق /ʃən/ (شن) كما فى (traditional).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (w) صامت لا يُنطق فى كلمة (wrap).

Vocabulary Check

الكلمات الإنجليزية لها معانٍ مختلفة حسب النص:

e.g. play games يلعب الألعاب   play music يشغل الموسيقى

يمكننا الحصول على عكس بعض الكلمات عن طريق إضافة البادئة (un):

e.g. wrap يغلف → unwrap يفتح

نستخدم اللاحقة (er) لتوضح الشخص الذى يقوم بالفعل.

e.g. seek يبحث → seeker باحث   play يلعب → player لاعب

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. Hide and seek is a party (festival – game – celebration – class).
2. When you (take – give – unwrap – buy) a present, you open it.
3. We can play (present – chairs – music – parcel) at a party.
4. Omar ran the fastest at the race; he is the (seeker – winner – player – chair).

Party games

ألعاب جماعية

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

When we get together with our friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play games. Here are some traditional games people play around the world.

عندما نجتمع مع أصدقائنا للاحتفال بشيء ما كأعياد الميلاد أو حفلات الزفاف، فإن الأطفال غالبًا ما يلعبون الألعاب. هذه بعض الألعاب التقليدية التي يلعبها الناس حول العالم.

Pass the parcel

نقل الطرود

We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to open presents.

How to play:

Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots... and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle. Play some music. Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.



كلنا نحب إعطاء الهدايا، كما أن فتح الهدايا أمر أكثر متعة.

كيفية اللعب: قم بلف هدية صغيرة وغطها بالكثير والكثير من الأوراق. يجلس اللاعبون في دائرة. قم بتشغيل بعض الموسيقى. يمرر اللاعبون الهدية للشخص التالي أثناء تشغيل الموسيقى. عندما تتوقف الموسيقى، يقوم اللاعب الذي يحمل الهدية بنزع ورقة واحدة عنها. اللاعب الذي يتمكن من فتح الهدية يحتفظ بها.

Musical chairs

الكراسي الموسيقية



Run but be ready to sit!

How to play:

Put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. Play some music.

Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down.

The player without the chair is "out". Take away one chair and play again.

اركض ولكن كن مستعدًا للجلوس.

كيفية اللعب: ضع بعض الكراسي. إذا كان لديك 6 لاعبين، فأنت تحتاج فقط 5 كراسي. قم بتشغيل بعض الموسيقى. يقوم اللاعبون بالركض حول الكراسي. حين تتوقف الموسيقى، يجلس الجميع على الكراسي. اللاعب الذي يبقى بدون كرسي يصبح خارج اللعبة. استبعد كرسيًا ثم أعد اللعب.

Hide and seek

الغميضة



This is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.

How to play:

One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten.
The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them.
The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

هذه اللعبة قديمة جدًا ومشهورة. يستطيع العديد من اللاعبين الانضمام إلى هذه اللعبة الشيقة. كل ما نحتاجه هو مكان واسع للعب.
كيفية اللعب: يقوم لاعب - ويسمى (الباحث) - بإغلاق عينيه والعد إلى عشرة. يقوم باقى اللاعبين بالاختباء. يحاول (الباحث) إيجادهم. أول لاعب يجده الباحث يصبح الباحث للعبة التالية. آخر من يتم إيجاده هو الفائز.

Important sentences جمل هامة

- When children get together, they play party games. - عندما يجتمع الأطفال سويًّا فإنهم يلعبون ألعابًا جماعية.
- We all love to give presents. - نحن جميعًا نحب تقديم الهدايا.
- In "Pass the parcel" the player who unwraps the present keeps it. - فى لعبة نقل الطرود، اللاعب الذى يفتح الهدية يحتفظ بها.
- In "Musical chairs", the player without a chair is "out". - فى لعبة الكراسى الموسيقية اللاعب الذى يبقى بدون كرسى يكون خارج اللعبة.
- Hide and seek is a very old and popular game. - تعتبر لعبة الغميضة لعبة قديمة وشائعة جدًّا.
- In "Hide and seek", one player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and tries to find the other players. - فى لعبة "الغميضة"، يغلق أحد اللاعبين، ويُدعى الباحث، عينيه ويحاول العثور على اللاعبين الآخرين.

Check point

1 What do you need to play Musical chairs?

....

2 Who is the seeker?

....

Notes

Pass the parcel

You need people.	You need presents.	You need music.

Musical chairs

You need people.	You need music.	You need to run.	The player without a chair is out.

Hide and seek

You need people.	You need to cover your eyes and play it.	It's better to play it outside.	You need to run.

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analyzing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 To play .... you need a present, music, and lots of paper.
(a. Pass the parcel – b. Musical chairs – c. Hide and seek – d. football)

2 .... a small present with lots of paper.
(a. Unwrap – b. Play – c. Wrap – d. Pass)

3 The players sit in a ....
(a. line – b. circle – c. triangle – d. square)

4 Pass the present as the music ....
(a. wraps – b. plays – c. needs – d. catches)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 5

1 Children play .... in birthday or wedding parties.
a) people b) games c) presents d) chairs

2 When we .... a present, we cover it with lots of paper.
a) open b) unwrap c) wrap d) put

3 The player without a chair is ....
a) of b) in c) out d) by

4 The player who .... the present keeps it.
a) wraps b) unwraps c) sits d) plays

5 When the music stops, everyone .... down.
a) stands b) sits c) runs d) jumps

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

celebration – Musical – run – music – out

When we are together with our friends, we often play party games. ....(1)............ chairs is my favorite party game. You need ....(2)............ to play this game. Players ....(3)............ around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is "............(4)............" .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

When we get together with our friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play games. There are many famous party games around the world. One of favorites is Hide and seek. This is a very old and popular game. All you need is a wide place to play it. You need many players and a wide place to play this game. One player, called the seeker, closes his/her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to catch them.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) Pass the parcel
b) Hide and seek
c) Musical chairs
d) Online games

2 When someone hides, you .... them.

a) can see
b) can't see
c) can catch
d) can stop

Answer the following questions:

3 What do you need to play Hide and seek? ....

4 Who closes his/her eyes in Hide and seek? ....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

it's even more fun to open presents

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Pass the parcel"

- What do you need to play the game?
- How do you play the game?
- Who can keep the present at the end?

....

....

....

....

Study

Lesson 2
Festivals around the world
المهرجانات حول العالم

A Reading

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Cheese rolling	دحرجة الجبن	Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية
Chinese New Year	عيد رأس السنة الصينية	La Tomatina	مهرجان الطماطم

Extra vocabulary

travels	سفريات	weird (adj.)	غريب	wonderful (adj.)	رائع
traditions	تقاليد	UK (United Kingdom)	المملكة المتحدة	hill	تل / هضبة
funny (adj.)	مضحك	strange (adj.)	غريب	way	وسيلة / طريقة
Asia	آسيا	envelope	ظرف	messy (adj.)	فوضوى
amount	كمية	Spain	إسبانيا	few (adj.)	قليل (العدد)
India	الهند	monsters	وحوش	silly (adj.)	سخيف / غبى
mud	طين	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ / شهى	yaun	يوان (عملة صينية)
inside	بالداخل	dragon	تنين	alive (adj.)	حى (على قيد الحياة)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
push	يدفع	pushed	happen	يحدث	happened
wish	يتمنى	wished	pull	يسحب	pulled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
understand	يفهم	understood	hurt	يجرح / يؤذى	hurt

Expressions and Phrases

tell about	يحكي عن	learn about	يتعلم عن
each other	بعضهم البعض	live together	يعيشون سويًّا
look back	يلقي نظرة على	run after	يطارد
look a bit dangerous	تبدو خطيرة للغاية	(be) called	يُدعى / يسمى
good luck	حظ سعيد	for fun	من أجل المتعة
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	(be) covered in	مُغطى بـ ...
most importantly	الأكثر أهمية	take part in	يشارك في



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (si) ينطقان /ʒ/ (چ) كما في (Asia).
- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ck) ينطقان /k/ (ك) كما في (luck).

Important sentences جمل هامة

- There are many different traditions and festivals around the world.
- هناك العديد من التقاليد والاحتفالات المختلفة حول العالم.
- In "Cheese rolling", people push the cheese and people run after it.
- في مهرجان "دحرجة الجبن"، يقوم الناس بدفع الجبن ويركض الناس خلفه.
- In "Chinese New Year", people at weddings and celebrations give the children red envelopes.
- في "السنة الصينية الجديدة"، يقوم الناس في الأعراس والاحتفالات بإعطاء الأطفال مظاريف حمراء.
- In "La Tomatina", everybody throws old tomatoes at each other.
- في "مهرجان الطماطم"، يقوم الجميع برمي الطماطم القديمة على بعضهم البعض.
- In "Kite festival" in India, hundreds of people fly their kites.
- في "مهرجان الطائرات الورقية" في الهند، يطلق مئات الأشخاص طائراتهم الورقية.

Vocabulary Check

تشير الأرقام الترتيبية إلى ترتيب شيء ما بالنسبة للأرقام الأخرى.

e.g. This is the fourth festival.

أسماء البلاد والمهرجانات تبدأ بحروف كبيرة.

e.g. China, Spain, Asia, India La Tomatina, Kite festival

Listening script SB

Different festivals

احتفالات مختلفة

Look and read:

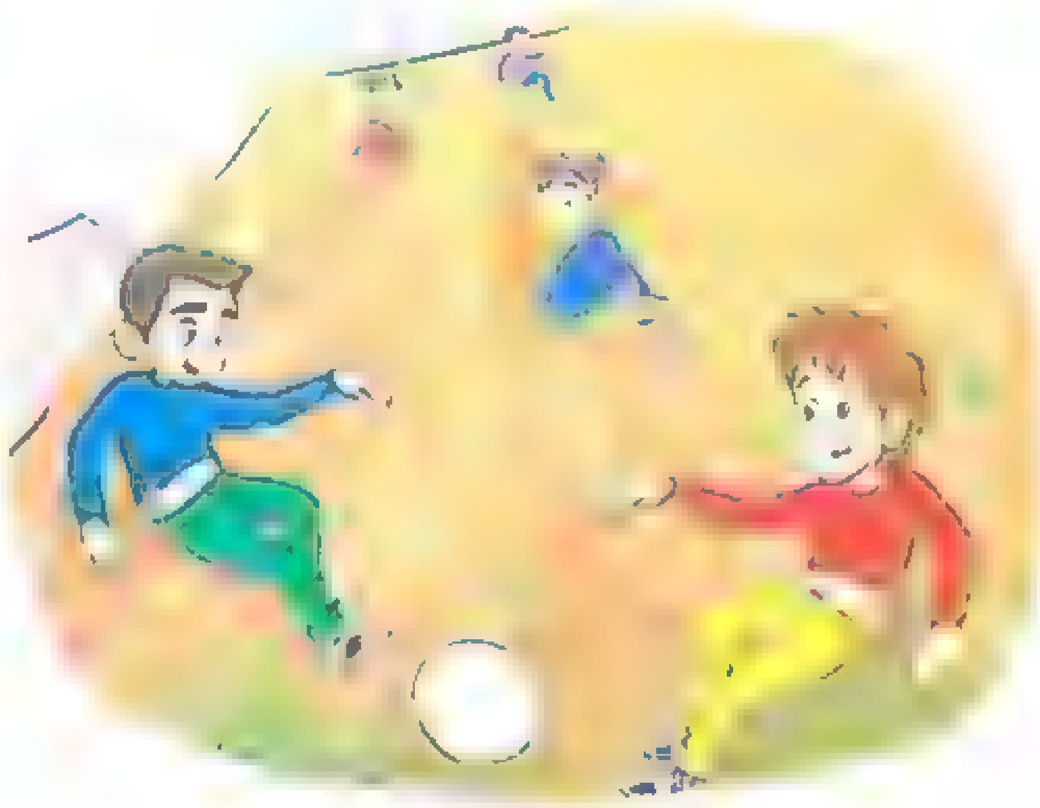
انظر واقرأ:

My name is Dina and it's my job to tell you about my travels and to bring the rest of the world into your home. The world is a big, beautiful place. The more we learn about other countries, the better we can understand each other and live together. This week I'm looking back at some of the weird and wonderful traditions I saw during my travels.

اسمى دينا ومن وظيفتى أن أخبرك عن رحلاتى وأن أجلب بقية العالم إلى منزلك. العالم مكان كبير وجميل. كلما عرفنا المزيد عن البلدان الأخرى، كان بإمكاننا فهم بعضنا البعض والعيش معًا بشكل أفضل. هذا الأسبوع ، ألقى نظرة على بعض التقاليد الغريبة والرائعة التى رأيتها خلال رحلاتى.

Cheese rolling

مهرجان دحرجة الجُبن



Let's start with this one in the UK, it was one of the strangest things I ever saw. Look, they pushed the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. Why did they do it? The person who won the race, won the cheese. It was funny (and very strange), but it looked a bit dangerous. Lots of people fell, but nobody was hurt.

• لنبدأ بهذا التقليد فى المملكة المتحدة، لقد كان من أغرب الأشياء التى رأيتها على الإطلاق. انظروا ، لقد دفعوا الجبن المستدير أسفل التل وركض مئات الأشخاص وراءه. لماذا فعلوا ذلك؟ الشخص الذى فاز بالسباق فاز بالجبن. كان الأمر مضحكًا (وغريبًا جدًا)، لكنه بدا خطيرًا إلى حد ما. سقط الكثير من الناس ولكن لم يصب أحد.

Chinese New Year

العام الصينى الجديد



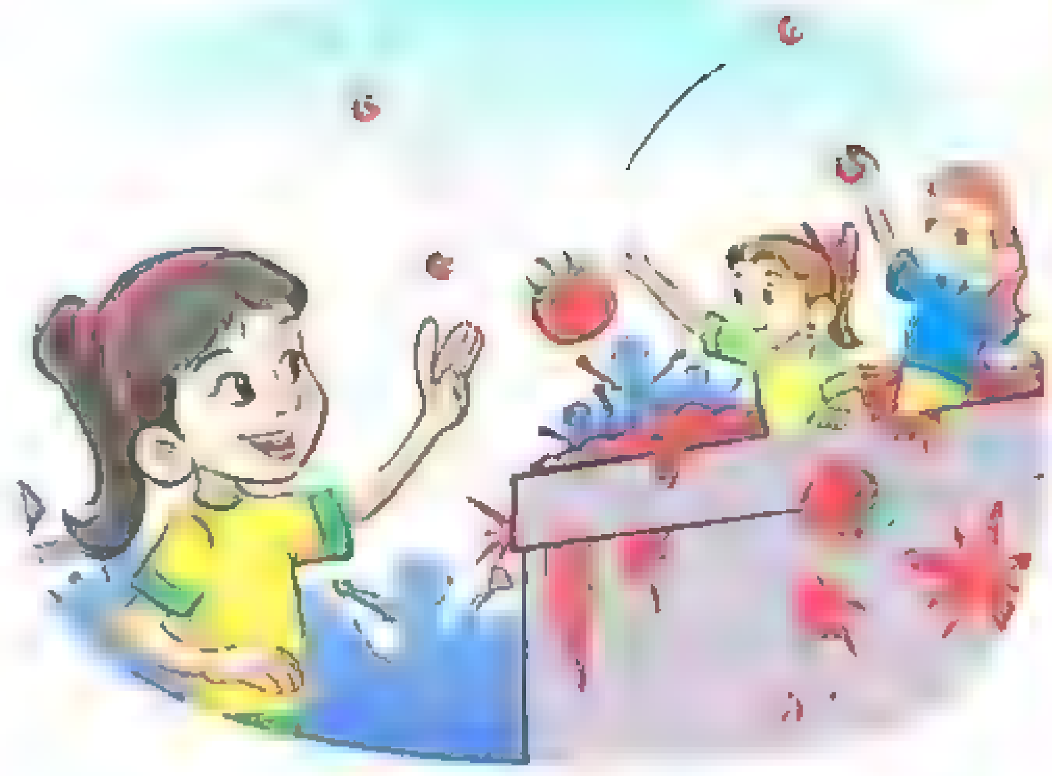
The next one was in China and many parts of Asia. People at weddings and celebrations gave the children and young people red envelopes.
I asked my friend about this and she told me that there was money inside the envelope and it was their way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually had an even number at the end (like, 2,4,6,8, etc.) because they said this was good luck.

كان التالى فى الصين وأجزاء كثيرة من آسيا. أعطى الناس فى الأعراس والاحتفالات للأطفال والشباب مظاريف حمراء. سألت صديقتى عن هذا وأخبرتنى أن هناك نقودًا داخل الظرف وأن هذه طريقتهم فى قول حظ سعيد. عادةً ما يكون لمبلغ المال رقم زوجى فى النهاية (مثل ، 2 ، 4 ، 6 ، 8 ، إلخ) لأنهم قالوا إن هذا كان حظًا سعيدًا.

La Tomatina

مهرجان الطماطم

I had lots of fun here, it was called La Tomatina and it was in Spain. It was very messy! Everybody threw old tomatoes at each other. I couldn't see anything. After a few minutes, everyone was covered in red tomatoes! Why do they throw old tomatoes? For fun!



• لقد استمتعت كثيرًا هنا ، وكان يسمى La Tomatina وكان في إسبانيا. لقد كان فوضويًا جدًا! ألقى الجميع الطماطم القديمة على بعضهم البعض. لم أستطع رؤية أي شيء. بعد بضع دقائق تم تغطية الجميع بالطماطم الحمراء! لماذا يرمون الطماطم القديمة؟ للمتعة!

Kite festival

مهرجان الطائرات الورقية

This is the fourth one. It was a beautiful kite festival. These happen all over the world, but this one was in India. Hundreds of people, young, and old, flew their kites. The sky was full of animals, fish, monsters ... I tried to fly one of the kites, it was very difficult!



Well, that's just a few examples of the festivals I saw during my travels. I saw people who wore colorful clothes, who ate delicious food, who did some silly things. Most importantly, in all these festivals I saw lots of happy smiling faces.

هذا هو الرابع. كان مهرجان طائرات ورقية جميلًا. يحدث هذا في جميع أنحاء العالم ، ولكن هذا كان في الهند. مئات من الناس، صغارًا وكبارًا، حلقوا بطائراتهم الورقية. كانت السماء مليئة بالحيوانات. أسماك، وحوش .. حاولت أن أطير إحدى الطائرات الورقية، كان الأمر صعبًا للغاية!

حسنًا، هذه مجرد أمثلة قليلة من المهرجانات التي رأيتها خلال رحلاتي. رأيت أشخاصًا يرتدون ملابس ملونة، ويأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا، ويفعلون أشياء سخيفة. الأهم من ذلك، في كل هذه المهرجانات رأيت الكثير من الوجوه المبتسمة السعيدة.

Check point

1 Where does the Cheese rolling festival take place?

....

2 How is everyone at the La Tomatina festival?

....

B Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

1) Regular verbs: الأفعال المنتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + (ed/d/ied) … .



She played basketball at the club last weekend.

هى لعبت كرة السلة فى النادى نهاية الأسبوع الماضى.

2) Irregular verbs: الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل … .



We ate fish yesterday.

أكلنا السمك أمس.

- Some irregular verbs:

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	run	يجرى	ran	fall	يسقط	fell
win	يفوز	won	fly	يطير	flew	give	يعطى	gave
tell	يخبر	told	have	يملك	had	say	يقول	said
throw	يلقى (يرمى)	threw	wear	يرتدى	wore	buy	يشترى	bought
make	يصنع	made	forget	ينسى	forgot	go	يذهب	went
come	يأتى	came	write	يكتب	wrote	build	يبنى	built

Note

بعض الأفعال فى التصريف الثانى تتشابه فى النطق مع كلمات أخرى:

e.g. ate – eight / read – red

Check point

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 We (see – sees – saw – seeing) Mr. Ahmed in town a few days ago.

2 The window was open and a bird (fly – flew – flies – flying) into the room.

3 They (build – builds – building – built) a new bridge over that river last year.

4 I saw people who (wore – wear – wears – to wear) colorful clothes.

5 I (having – has – had – have) a car last year.

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5

1 Everyone was covered in .... in La Tomatina festival.

a) pink b) red c) black d) green

2 The person who won the ...., won the cheese.

a) envelope b) festival c) race d) dragon

3 They pushed the cheese and hundreds of people .... after it.

a) see b) eat c) drink d) ran

4 I gave her the .... and wished her good luck.

a) kite b) envelope c) dragon d) monster

5 The cheese rolling festival looks a bit .... Lots of people fall down.

a) safe b) dangerous c) pretty d) important

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

hill – celebrate – people – rolling – race

There are many wonderful festivals that I saw during my travels. The most interesting one was the Cheese ....(1)............ festival. It takes place in the UK. People push the round cheese down the ....(2)............ . Hundreds of ....(3)............ run after it. The person who wins the ....(4)............, wins the cheese.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

The world is a big, beautiful place. People celebrate different festivals around the world. The Chinese New Year festival is a wonderful festival in China. People give the children and the young red envelopes. There's usually money inside them. It's the Chinese way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually has an even number at the end because they say it brings good luck, too.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) Cheese rolling　　b) Chinese New Year

c) La Tomatina festival　　d) Kite festival

2 The amount of money usually has a/an .... number at the end.

a) odd　　b) even　　c) zero　　d) decimal

Answer the following questions:

3 How do Chinese people celebrate Chinese New Year?

....

4 What is usually inside the envelopes?

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 6

1 I (win) .... the race two days ago.

2 They (see) .... many beautiful kites in the sky last week.

3 My grandparents (give) .... me a card and wished me good luck.

4 I (look) .... around and everything was red in La Tomatina festival.

5 I (go) .... to the museum yesterday.

6 She (make) .... a delicious cake yesterday.

5 Punctuate the following: 2

1 it was a beautiful kite festival.

....

2 what did they do at La Tomatina festival

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"La Tomatina festival"

• Where is it?	• What do people do during the festival?
• in Spain	• throw old tomatoes at each other.

....

....

....

....

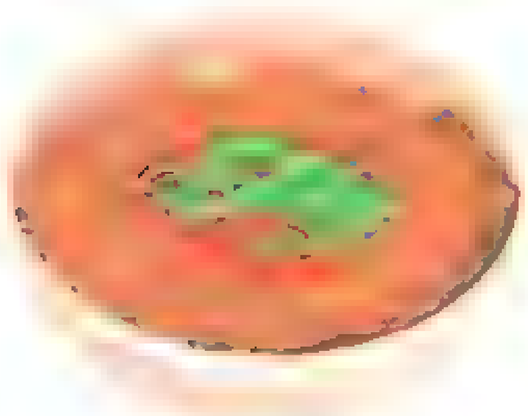
Study

Lesson 3

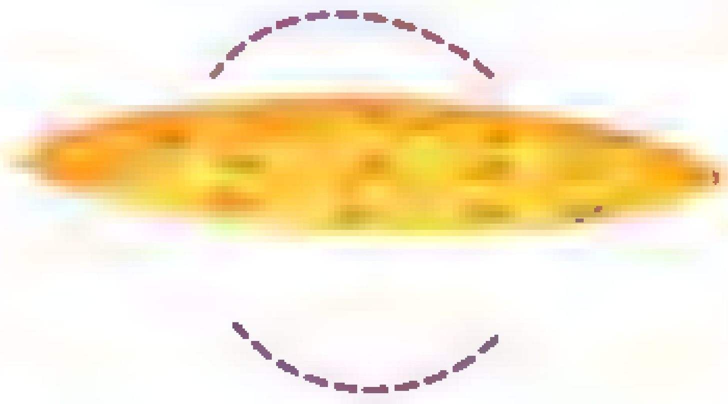
A Citizenship المواطنة

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



Ful Medames فول مدمس



Basbousa بسبوسة



karate كاراتيه

Extra vocabulary

special (adj.)	مميز	country	دولة/بلد	history	تاريخ
rich (adj.)	غني	culture	ثقافة	wonderful (adj.)	رائع
olive oil	زيت الزيتون	garlic	ثوم	sweet (adj.)	حلو
semolina	دقيق السميد	syrup	شراب السكر	helpful (adj.)	مساعد
visitors	زوار	hospitable (adj.)	مضياف	Sinai region	منطقة سيناء
south	جنوب	east	شرق	authors	مؤلفون

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
continue	يستمر	continued	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
cook	يطبخ	cooked	snow	يغطي بالثلج	snowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يفكر/يعتقد	thought	win	يفوز	won

Expressions and Phrases

famous for	مشهور بـ ...	look around	ينظر حوله	proud of	فخور بـ
described with	يوصف بـ ...	served with	يقدم مع	under the age of	تحت سن
full of energy	ملىء بالطاقة	make movies	يصنع الأفلام	win prize	يفوز بجائزة



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن الحروف (cial) تُنطق /ʃl/ (شال) كما فى (special).
- لاحظ أن الحروف (ture) تُنطق /tʃər/ (تشر) كما فى (culture)/(nature).

What makes us special?

ما يجعلنا مميزون؟

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country.

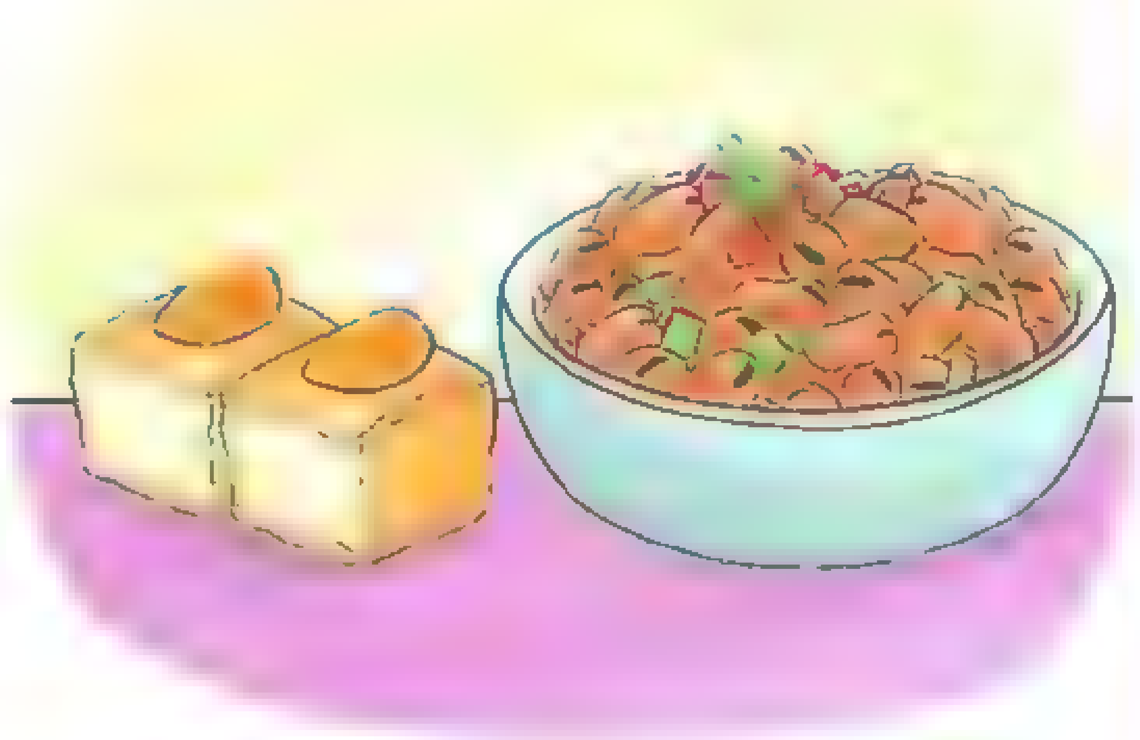
نحن غالبًا ما نحتفل بأشياء تخص تاريخ بلادنا. بلد كمصر مشهورة بتاريخها ويجب علينا أن نستمر فى الاحتفال بثقافها الغنية. دعنا ننظر حولنا ونقول لماذا يجب علينا أن نفتخر ببلدنا الجميلة.

Here are some ideas:

يوجد بعض الأفكار:

The food:

الطعام:



Our food can be described with one word: wonderful!
Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic.
Maybe you want something sweet? How about Basbousa, a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup.

يمكن وصف طعامنا بكلمة واحدة: رائع!

ربما أشهر أطعمنا الفول المدمس، وهو فول مطبوخ ببطء شديد، ويقدم مع الكثير من زيت الزيتون والثوم. ربما تريد بعضًا من الحلويات. ماذا عن البسبوسة؟ كيكة رقيقة من السميد مع شراب السكر.

The people:

الناس:



More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to visitors. We are very hospitable people.

أكثر من نصف عدد المصريين تحت سن الثلاثين. وهذا يعنى أننا مليئون بالطاقة . نحن نساعد بعضنا، كما أننا ودودون جدًّا مع الزائرين. نحن شعب مضياف.

Nature: الطبيعة:

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile, it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

يعتقد العديد من الناس أن مصر صحراء فقط. صحيح أن 90% من مصر صحراء ولكن لدينا أيضًا أراضٍ خضراء. بالقرب من النيل الأراضى خضراء وجميلة. هناك جبال فى الجنوب والشرق وتمطر جليدًا أحيانًا فى منطقة سيناء.



Culture: الثقافة:

We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

نحن نقوم بصناعة الكثير من الأفلام والعديد منها مشهور. كما أن لدينا مؤلفين فازوا بجوائز هامة. وبالطبع نحن نحب الرياضة. أى شخص يحب الكاراتيه يعرف اسم واحدة من أشهر لاعبى الكاراتيه (فريال عبد العزيز).



Definitions

special	having something different or that nobody else has	امتلاك شىء مختلف أو شىء لا يمتلكه أى شخص آخر
hospitable	friendly, welcoming, and generous to visitors	ودود ومرحّب وكريم مع الزوار
serve	to give someone food or drink	أن تعطى لشخص طعامًا أو شرابًا
celebrate	to be proud of	أن تشعر بالفخر
region	a part of a country	جزء من بلد
authors	people who write movies and stories	الأشخاص الذين يكتبون الأفلام والقصص

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Egypt is famous for its history.
  - مصر مشهورة بتاريخها.
- Ful Medames and basbousa are famous Egyptian food.
  - الفول المدمس والبسبوسة من الأكلات المصرية الشهيرة.
- 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands.
  - ٩٠٪ من مساحة مصر صحراء، ولكن لدينا أيضًا أراضٍ خضراء.
- Egyptians are full of energy. They are very hospitable people.
  - المصريون مليئون بالطاقة. إنهم أناس مضيافون للغاية.
- We have authors who won important prizes and famous players.
  - لدينا مؤلفون فازوا بجوائز مهمة ولاعبون مشهورون.

B Language Focus

Making adjectives

تكوين الصفات

Form

We can make an adjective by adding the suffix (-ful) to the end of a verb or noun.

يمكن تكوين الصفة بإضافة اللاحقة (- ful) إلى نهاية الاسم أو الفعل.

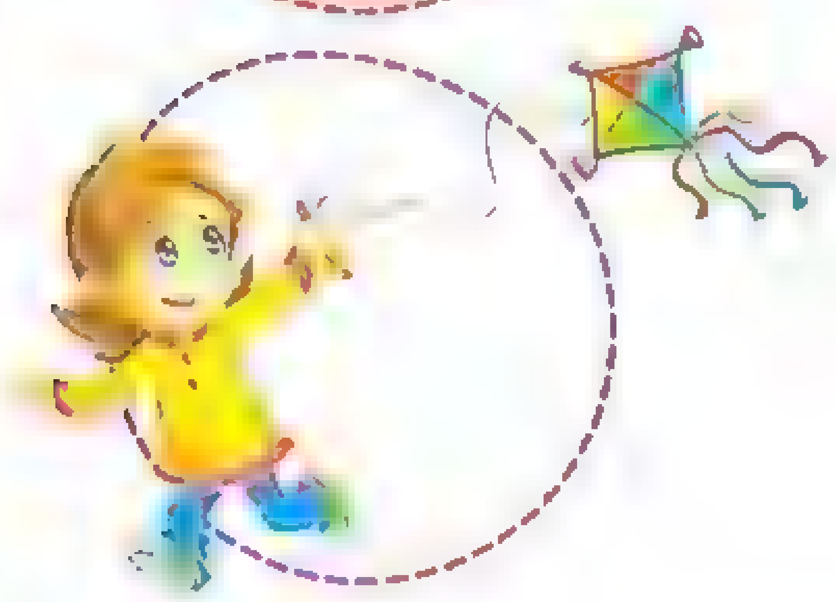
noun or verb + (-ful) = adjective

care	يعتنى	→ careful	حريص	pain	ألم	→ painful	مؤلم
help	يساعد	→ helpful	متعاون	wonder	يتعجب	→ wonderful	رائع
use	يستخدم	→ useful	مفيد	color	لون	→ colorful	ملون



I hurt my arm. It is painful.

لقد جرحت ذراعى. إنها مؤلمة.



My kite is colorful.

طائرتى الورقية ملونة.

Note When a noun ends in (y), replace it with (i) when adding (-ful).

عندما ينتهى الاسم بحرف (y)، استبدل الحرف بـ (i) عند إضافة (- ful).

e.g. beauty → beautiful.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. The Egyptian food is (wonder – wonders – wonderful – wondered).
2. You must be (careful – care – caring – cared) when you cross the road.
3. He hurt his leg. It was (pain – paining – painful – pained).
4. I love color festivals. They are very (color – colors – colorful – coloring).
5. Those tools are very (use – useful – uses – using) for fixing our door. SB

Practice Lesson 3

30

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 Egypt is a .... country.
(a. big – b. small – c. crowded – d. busy)

2 Our food can be described as ....
(a. wonder – b. ugly – c. hot – d. wonderful)

3 Egyptian people are friendly and ....
(a. special – b. hospitable – c. unfriendly – d. happy)

4 More than half of Egyptians are under the age of ....
(a. 10 – b. 30 – c. 20 – d. 50)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 It's always good to be .... to other people.
a) help b) helped c) helpful d) helps

2 When someone is ...., he is friendly and welcoming to visitors.
a) careful b) hospitable c) useful d) colorful

3 90% of Egypt is ...., but we also have green lands.
a) rivers b) forests c) desert d) mountains

4 The nature in Egypt is ....
a) wonder b) wondered c) wonders d) wonderful

5 Alia's dress is .... We all love it.
a) colorful b) helpful c) useful d) painful

6 A/An .... writes movies and stories.
a) player b) author c) visitor d) Egyptian

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Egypt is famous for its rich culture and delicious dishes. Ful Medames is a famous Egyptian food. Egyptian people ate it thousands of years ago. It's beans cooked slowly and served with lots of olive oil and garlic. To make it, you take the beans and put them in water for many hours. Then you mix the beans with olive oil, lemon juice, onions, and salt. In my house, we eat Ful Medames for breakfast, but my best friend eats it for dinner.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 Egypt is famous for its delicious ....

a) culture b) dishes c) people d) nature

2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) lemon juice b) breakfast c) dinner d) Ful Medames

Answer the following questions:

3 How is Ful Medames served? ....

4 Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

5

SB

1 The shirt has red, blue, and green stripes, it's very (color) ....

2 Her dress is (wonder) .... I like it.

3 I hurt my ankle. It's very (pain) ....

4 I'm very (care) .... when I go online.

5 He's very (helps) .... He likes to help others.

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 it even snows in sinai region.

....

2 Ferial abdelaziz is a famous karate player

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Culture in Egypt"

lots of movies – important prizes - love sports

....

....

....

....

Study

Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Main vocabulary

birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد	information	معلومات
invitation	دعوة	address	عنوان

Extra vocabulary

missing (adj.)	مفقود	road	طريق
whole	كل	so	ولذلك
library	مكتبة	guests	ضيوف
celebration	احتفال	school yard	ساحة المدرسة
T-shirt	تيشرت	shorts	شورت
class	فصل		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	invite	يدعـو	invited
remember	يتذكر	remembered	hope	يأمل	hoped
decorate	يزين	decorated	prepare	يجهز	prepared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتي	came	have	يملك	had
wear	يرتدي	wore	bring	يحضر	brought

Expressions and Phrases

make a list	يعد قائمة	RSVP	من فضلك أرسل ردًا
see you then	أراك لاحقًا	It'll be fun!	سيكون الأمر ممتعًا!
party games	الألعاب الجماعية	Musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية
something blue	شيء ما باللون الأزرق	agree on	يتفق على
Be ready to	كن مستعدًا لـ ...	lots of	الكثير من
have fun	يستمتع		

A Writing

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Writing an invitation

كتابة دعوة

1
Birthday party
- my house -
Thursday.
Wael
RSVP

2
Can you come to my house
on Thursday at 3 pm?
My address is 12 Dene Road.
See you then!
Wael

3
I'm having a birthday party at 3 pm.
Can you come?
Remember to wear
something blue.
Wael

4
Please come to my party.
It will be fun! It's on Saturday.
See you then!
Wael

Dear ____________

I'm having ____________ party next Thursday at my house. Can you come?
I'm inviting the whole class so all our friends will be there. I want to play some party games so bring some music so we can play Musical chairs.

When:	Thursday, August 12th
What time?	3 pm – 5 pm
Where:	12 Dene Road (my house!) (next to the library)
What to wear?	Something blue
RSVP:	9768 324 590

I hope you can come.





I can find it out!

RSVP is taken from the French phrase *Répondez s'il vous plait* and it means "Please respond" to confirm an invitation. It is a formal language.

مأخوذة من عبارة فرنسية تعني يرجى الرد "RSVP" لتأكيد الدعوة وهي لغة رسمية.

B Project

Prepare a class celebration

تحضير احتفال الصف

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Our Class's Sports Day

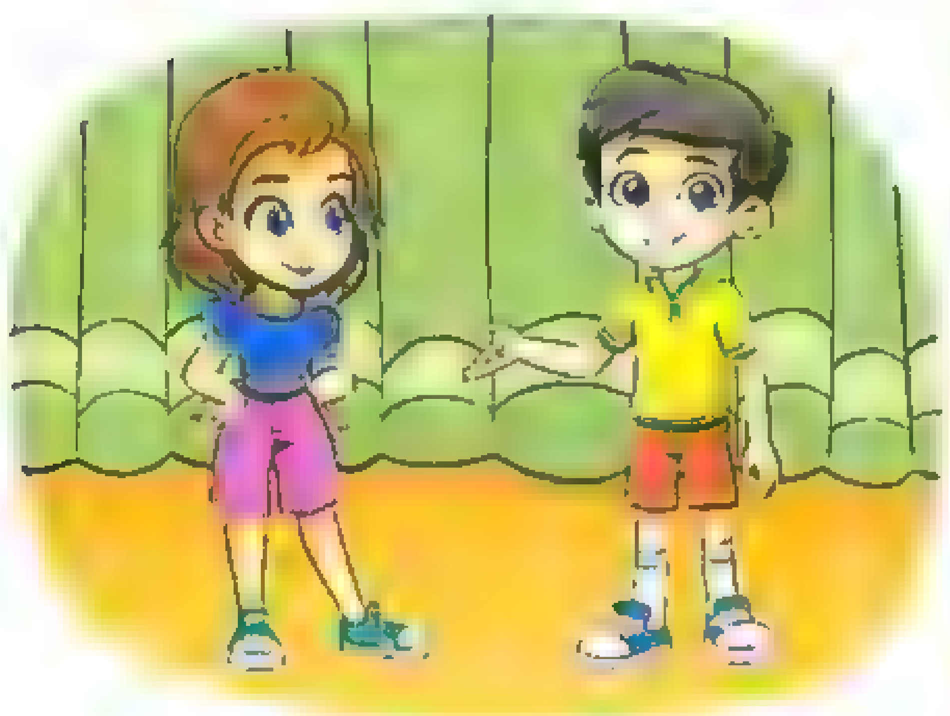
اليوم الرياضى لطلابنا



Where: In the school yard



When: Tuesday, 10 am – 11am



What to wear: T-shirt and shorts



Please bring: Water and lots of cake!

Be ready to: play lots of games, have fun, and eat lots of cake!

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (6)

1 Dalia is inviting Heba to her sister's ....
(a. wedding – b. birthday party – c. graduation party – d. football match)

2 The party will be next ....
(a. Tuesday – b. Monday – c. Thursday – d. Saturday)

3 They can play some ....
(a. online games – b. computer games – c. board games – d. party games)

4 The party will be in the ....
(a. hotel – b. school – c. house – d. club)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 Remember to .... a blue T-shirt at the party.
a) eat b) wear c) drink d) play

2 Bring some music, so we can play .... chairs.
a) Pass b) Musical c) Seek d) Hide

3 A: .... is the party? B: Thursday, August 12th.
a) Where b) What c) Why d) When

4 I'm inviting the .... class, so all our friends will be there.
a) whole b) hole c) hall d) hill

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

party – road – next – friends – games

Dear Nadia,

I'm inviting you to my sister's wedding party next Friday. All my family and ....(1)........... will be there to celebrate. I want to play some party ....(2)........... so bring some music, so we can play Musical chairs. The ....(3)........... will be at 12 Pyramids street (my house!) ....(4)........... to the library.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Salma's birthday is on April 24th. She is having a birthday party at her house. She will invite all her family members and friends to the party. She wants to play some party games at the party. She will tell her friend Lama to bring some music, so they can play Musical chairs. She will tell all her friends to wear something pink. She will have fun with her friends. They will take a lot of photos.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) Salma's wedding b) Salma's birthday

c) Salma's graduation d) Salma's sports day

2 Salma's birthday is in ....

a) March b) August c) April d) December

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where will be the birthday party? ....

4 What will Salma's friends wear? ....

5 Punctuate the following: (2)

1 Remember to wear something pink, hana

....

2 can you come to my birthday party

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"An invitation to your birthday party"

- When will it be?
- Where it will be?
- How will you celebrate?

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 9 REVIEW



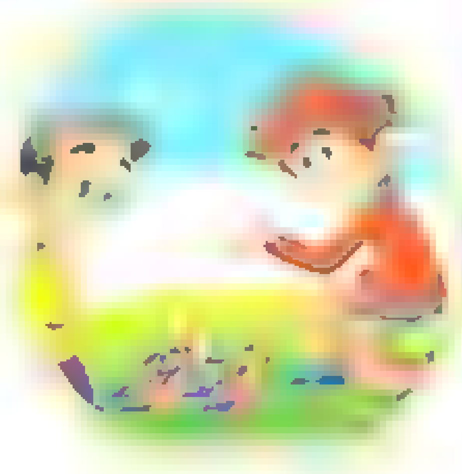
Vocabulary


Hide and seek


Pass the parcel

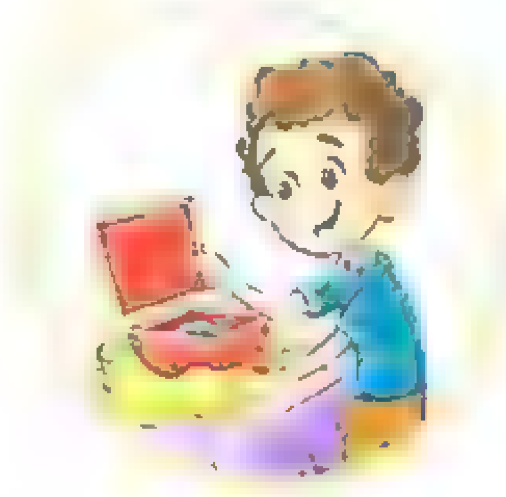

Musical chairs


play music


play games


give presents


wrap presents


open presents

Language Focus

Making adjectives

noun or verb + (-ful) = adjective

care	يعتني	→	careful	حريص
help	يساعد	→	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	→	useful	مفيد
pain	ألم	→	painful	مؤلم
wonder	يتعجب	→	wonderful	رائع
color	لون	→	colorful	ملون

The Past Simple Tense

Regular verbs:

Subject + (inf.) + d/ ed/ ied



She played basketball at the club last weekend.

Irregular verbs:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ...



We saw a movie last night.

Citizenship: What makes us special?

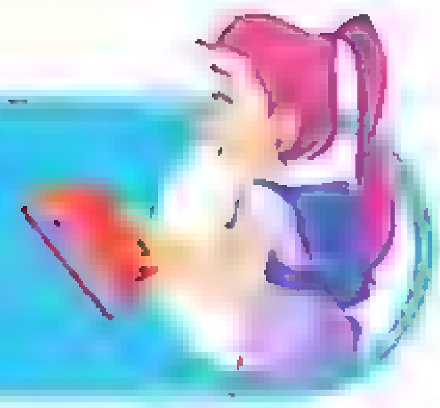
Food:
Our food is wonderful. We have the famous dish Ful Medames.

People:
Egyptian people are hospitable and friendly to visitors.

Nature:
90 % of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands.

Culture:
We have famous authors who won important prizes. We also love sports.

Unit 9 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



Lesson 1

يعطى هدية	....	لعبة نقل الطرود	....
لعبة الغميضة	....	يلعب الألعاب	....
يلف الهدايا	....	لعبة الكراسى الموسيقية	....
يفتح الهدايا	....	يشغل الموسيقى	....

Lesson 2

دول	....	إسبانيا	....
تقاليد	....	فوضوى	....
تل / هضبة	....	الهند	....
غريب	....	آسيا	....
ظرف	....	وحوش	....
طين	....	تنين	....

Lesson 3

رائع	....	بسبوسة	....
مؤلفون	....	مضياف	....
كاراتيه	....	فول مدمس	....

Lessons 4 & 5

معلومات	....	عنوان	....
حفلة عيد ميلاد	....	دعوة	....
طريق	....	مفقود	....
ضيوف	....	مكتبة	....
احتفال	....	ساحة المدرسة	....
فصل	....	تيشرت	....
شورت	....	يتخيل	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME

How to write about party games

1. My favorite party game is + اسم اللعبة.
2. You need (people/ music/ presents) to play this game.
3. To play this game + خطوات لعب اللعبة

My favorite party game is Hide and seek. You need people and a wide place to play this game. To play this game, the seeker closes his/her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The last one left is the winner.

Writing about an unusual festival

1. What is the name of the festival?
2. Where does it take place?
3. How do people celebrate it?

My favorite festival is La Tomatina. It takes place in Spain. Everybody throws old tomatoes at each other. After a few minutes, everyone is covered in red. They do that for fun.

Writing an invitation

1. Dear + اسم الشخص المدعو.
2. I'm inviting you to + اسم المناسبة.
3. It's on + تاريخ وموعد المناسبة.
4. It will be at + مكان المناسبة.
5. We will + أسماء الأنشطة.
6. You can wear + زى المناسبة.
7. I hope you can come.

Dear Adel,

I'm inviting you to my birthday party. It's on Sunday, April 12th. The party will be at the City Park. We will play some party games and eat cakes. You can wear something blue. I hope you can come.

Ola

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

Unit 9 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Correct the sentences:

1 Basbousa is very salty.

....

2 Egypt is full of old people.

....

3 About 90% of Egypt is green land.

....

4 Ferial Abdelaziz is a tennis player.

....

2 Make these verbs/nouns into adjectives:

1 beauty ....

2 help ....

3 wonder ....

4 use ....

5 color ....

3 Complete the sentences with the adjectives:

wonderful – useful – colorful – helpful – beautiful

1 Alia's dress is .... We all love it!

2 Learning about Egypt is .... It has an amazing history!

3 Our school's cleaners are very .... They help keep our school clean.

4 Those tools are very .... for fixing our door.

5 That shirt has red, blue, and green stripes. It's very ....

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 9

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1 To play Pass the parcel, wrap a .... and cover it with lots of paper.
(a. present – b. game – c. chair – d. box)

2 We need .... to play Pass the parcel.
(a. songs – b. music – c. balls – d. basket)

3 Players give the present to the ....person.
(a. next – b. out – c. seeker – d. last)

4 The player who is holding the present .... one piece of paper.
(a. wraps – b. unwraps – c. covers – d. hides)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 When we get together, we .... party games.
a) wrap b) open c) play d) unwrap

2 The book was .... It gave me the information I needed.
a) painful b) careful c) colorful d) helpful

3 We have many .... who won important prizes.
a) authors b) regions c) lands d) dishes

4 "......................." means having something different or that nobody else has.
a) Hospitable b) Friendly c) Sweet d) Special

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

players – south – snows – green – desert

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that about 90% of Egypt is ....(1)............, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile, it's ....(2)............and beautiful. There are mountains in the ....(3)............ and east of Egypt. It even ....(4)............ in Sinai region.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history, and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. There are many things that make us special. Our food is wonderful. Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames which is beans cooked very slowly and served with lots of olive oil and garlic. We also make lots of movies, and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 Egypt has a .... culture.
a) poor b) boring c) small d) rich

2 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
a) movies b) prizes c) authors d) countries

Answer the following questions:

3 What makes us special? ....

4 What is Ful Medames? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 I (go) .... to the Kite festival last year.

2 The Egyptian food is (wonder) ....

3 This website is very (use) .... I can find information I need for my homework.

4 I (eat) .... ful medames for breakfast yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

we are very hospitable people

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Party games"

- When do we play party games?
- What do you need to play party games?

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 9 AL-AZHAR CORNER

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 Marwa was at .... festival last month.

(Chinese New Year – Cheese rolling – La Tomatina)

2 The festival takes place in ....

(Spain – China – London)

3 Everything was .... in the festival.

(blue – red – white)

2 Read and complete the dialog:

coming – house – Where – party

Nada : I'm inviting you to my birthday .... next Friday.

Heba : Great. .... will it be?

Nada : 11 Al-Ahram St. at my ....

Heba : Of course. I'm ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 Salma's dress had many colors. It was really (painful – colorful – careful).

2 We (celebrate – celebrated – celebrating) the La Tomatina festival in Spain last week.

3 (Special – Region – Proud) means having something different or that nobody else has.

4 You need people, (music – presents – paper), and chairs to play Musical chairs.

5 A/An (author – region – prize) is a part of a country.

Unit 10

I enjoy my life

أنا أستمتع بحياتي



Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Al-Azhar | Answers 100%

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
  - listen, read, research, and write about social media.
  - give advice with *should*.
  - learn and say words that start with un-.
  - read and listen to a short story.
  - write about the pros and cons of computer games.
  - research and make a leaflet.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.
  - يعطي نصائح باستخدام "يجب".
  - يتعلم وينطق كلمات تبدأ بـ -un.
  - يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
  - يكتب عن إيجابيات وسلبيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
  - يبحث ويقوم بعمل منشور.

Did you know?

- The first call from a cell phone was made in 1973. We check our cell phones about 150 times a day. I don't think it is healthy.

I can find it out!

- Studies show that around 98.29 million Egyptians had cell phones by 2022; that's around 93.4% of Egypt's total population in 2022.

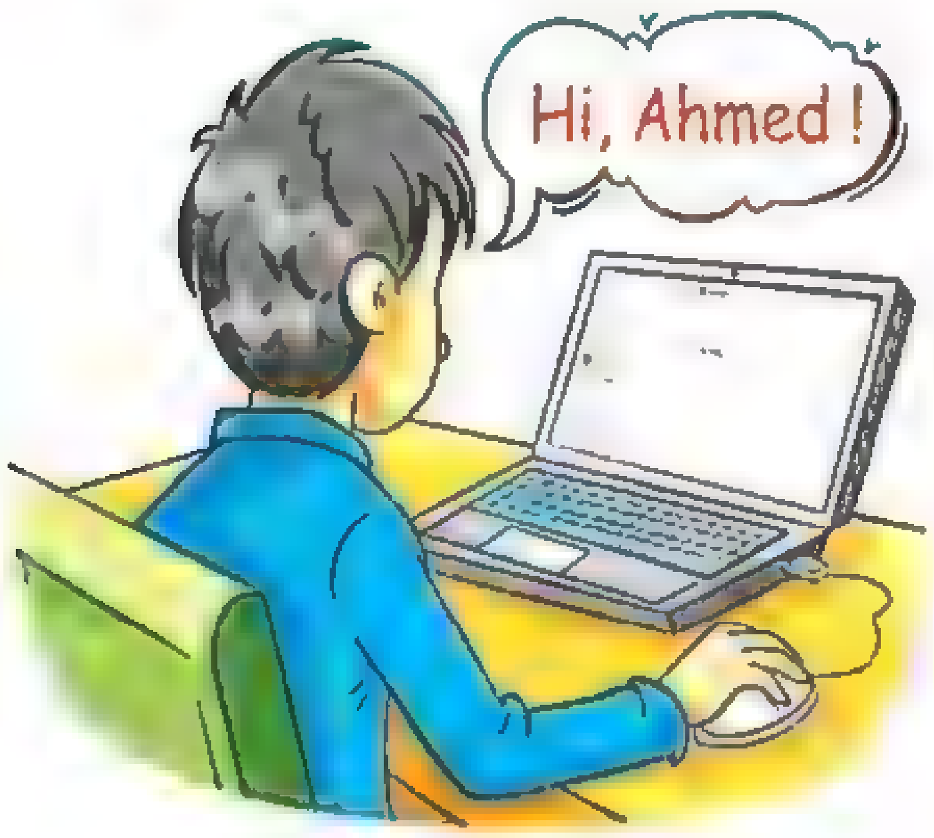
Study

Lesson 1

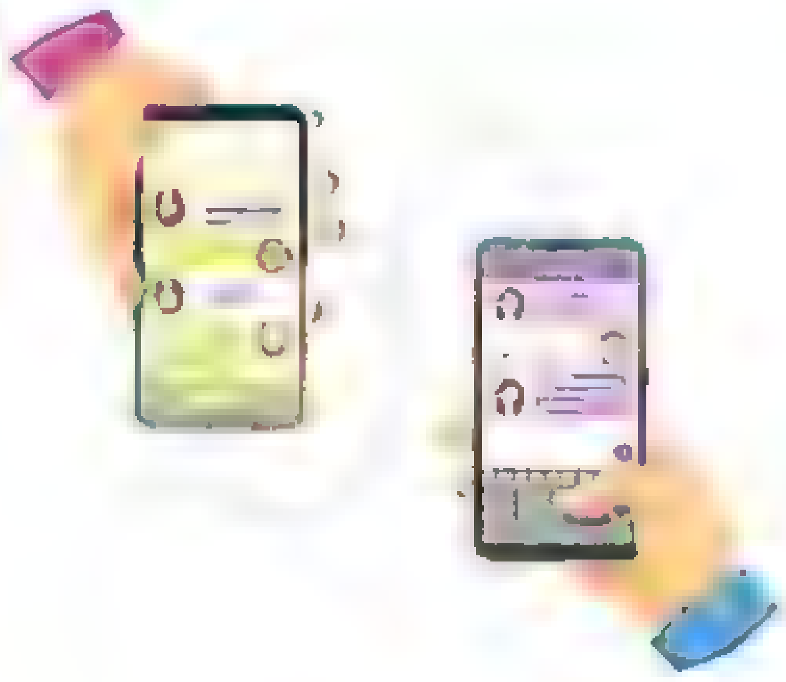
An interesting research

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

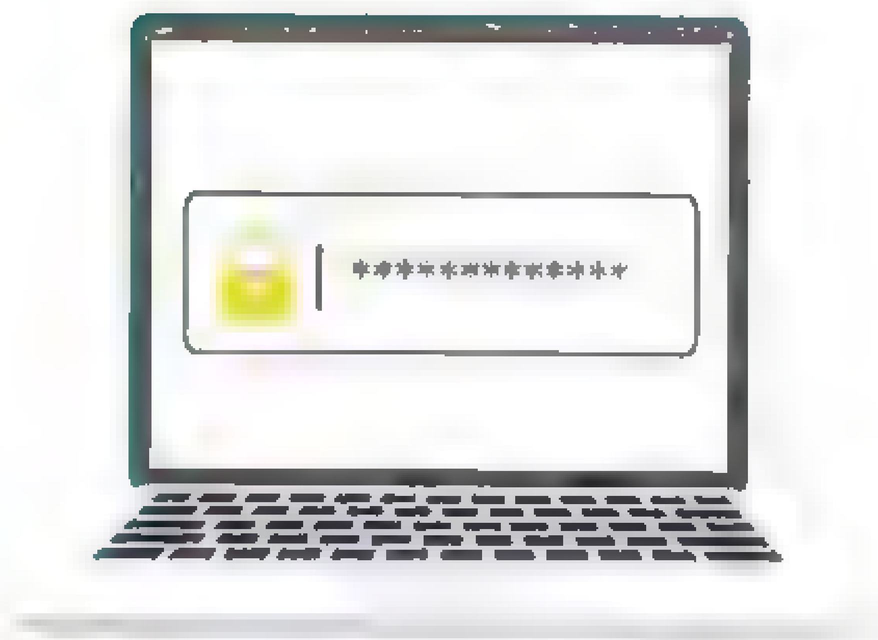
Main vocabulary



message
يراسل/رسالة



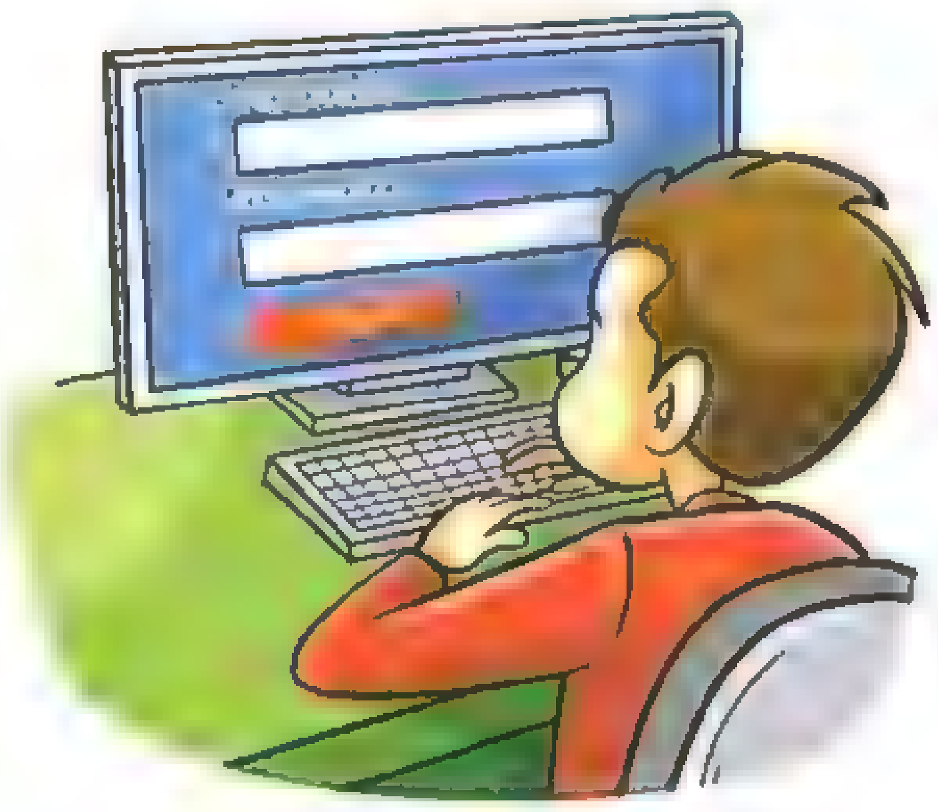
chat
يحادث/محادثة



password
كلمة المرور



do research
يُجرى بحثًا



log in
يقوم بتسجيل الدخول



chameleon
حرباء



website
موقع إلكترونى

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش) فى (research).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج) كما فى (message).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) أحيانًا ينطقان /k/ (ك) فى (chameleon).
- لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) تُنطق /ʃən/ (شن) كما فى (information) / (presentation).

Extra vocabulary

interesting (adj.)	شيق/مثير للاهتمام	library website	موقع المكتبة الإلكترونى
same	نفس/مثل	amazing (adj.)	مذهل/مدهش
presentation	عرض تقديمى	respectful (adj.)	محترم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
log into	يسجل الدخول على موقع	logged into	create	ينشئ	created
change	يغير	changed	message	يراسل	messaged
chat	يحادث	chatted	remember	يتذكر	remembered
copy	ينسخ	copied	plan	يخطط	planned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
do	يفعل	did	get	يحصل على	got
say	يقول	said	know	يعرف	knew
find	يجد	found	write	يكتب	wrote

Expressions and Phrases

create a password	ينشئ كلمة مرور	the same color as	نفس لون
What else?	ماذا أيضًا؟	make a presentation	يقدم عرضًا
chat with someone	يحادث شخصًا ما	Write your own words.	اكتب كلماتك الخاصة بك.

Vocabulary Check

هناك بعض الكلمات من الممكن أن تستخدم كاسم أو فعل مثل (message) أو (chat):

Word	Noun (اسم)	Verb (فعل)
message	I sent my friend a message about the information.	I need to message Yara about the information.
chat	We had a chat to plan the presentation.	I chatted with Yara yesterday about homework.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. Adel is (doing – making – drawing – eating) research about computers.
2. I like to (copy – log into – log out – chat) with my friends.
3. You shouldn't share your (research – message – password – projects) with others.
4. (Messages – Websites – Chameleons – Passwords) give us information when we do research.

Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom

What are you doing, Dalia?

ماذا تفعلين يا داليا؟





Dalia

I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting! I logged into this library website and I created a password to get information.

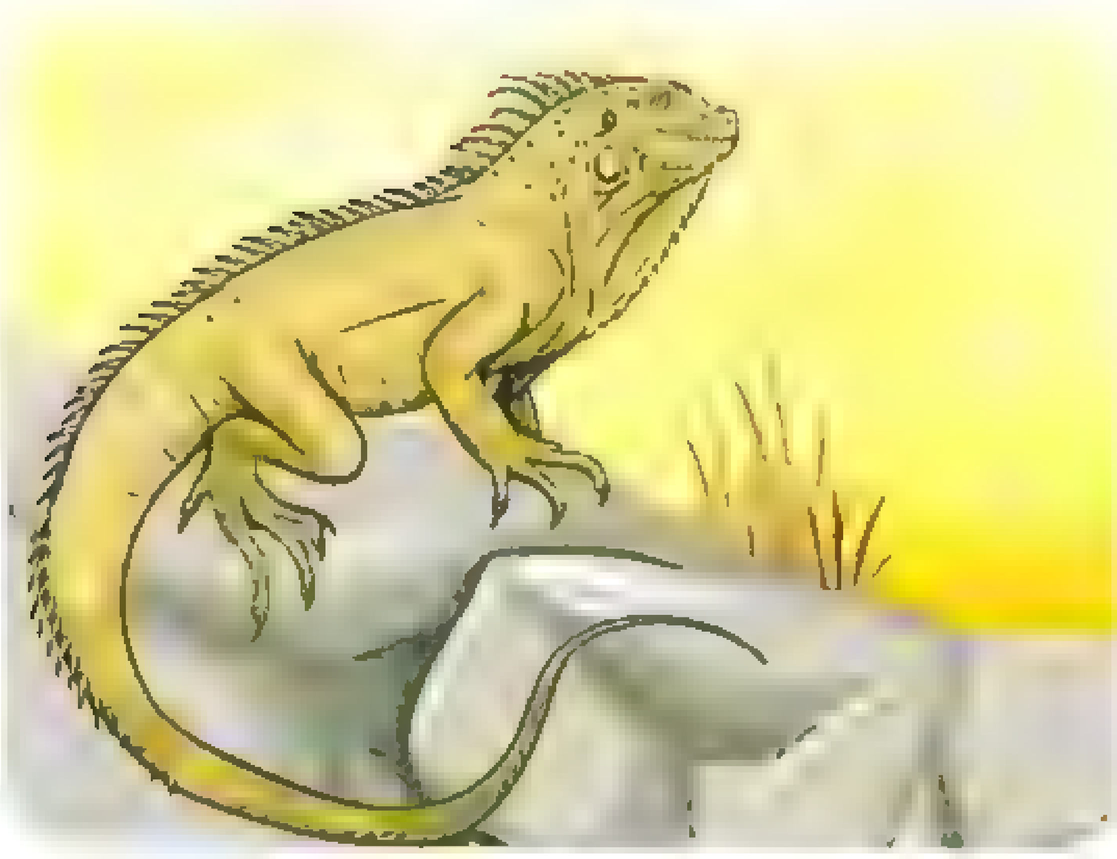
أنا أقوم بعمل واجبى المنزلى عن الحرابى. إنها شيقة!
أنا قمت بتسجيل الدخول إلى موقع المكتبة الإلكترونى هذا وأنشأت كلمة مرور للحصول على المعلومات.



Mom

What does it say?

ماذا يقول؟





Dalia

Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are.

الحرابى تغير لونها. يكون لونهما مثل لون المكان الذى توجد فيه.



Mom

Wow! That's interesting! What else?

واو. هذا شيق! ماذا أيضًا؟

Dalia



They have amazing eyes and they can see all around. But I need to do more research. I want to message Yara and chat with her. She knows some great websites.

لديها عيون مذهلة ويمكنها رؤية كل شيء من حولها. لكنى بحاجة إلى إجراء المزيد من البحث. أريد مراسلة يارا ومحادثتها. إنها تعرف بعض المواقع الإلكترونية الرائعة.



Mom

Are you making a presentation about chameleons?

هل ستقدمين عرضًا عن الحرابى؟



Dalia



Yes, I'm making a presentation with Yara. I need to look at lots of websites and find some nice pictures.

نعم، أنا سأقدم عرضًا مع يارا. أحتاج إلى إلقاء نظرة على الكثير من المواقع الإلكترونية والعثور على بعض الصور الجميلة.



Mom

Remember to be respectful. Don't copy information. Find ideas and write your own words.

تذكرى أن تكون محترمة. لا تنسخى المعلومات. اعثرى على الأفكار واكتبى كلماتك الخاصة بك.

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 Dalia is in grade ....
(a. two – b. three – c. four – d. five)

2 She is doing her homework about ....
(a. ants – b. spiders – c. cats – d. chameleons)

3 Chameleons can change ....
(a. skin – b. color – c. tail – d. legs)

4 Dalia created a .... to get information.
(a. password – b. chat – c. message – d. website)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 5

1 A: What are you ...., Dalia? B: I'm doing my homework.
a) eating b) drinking c) doing d) chatting

2 .... have amazing eyes, and they can see all around.
a) Birds b) Crocodiles c) Chameleons d) Fish

3 Are you making a .... about chameleons?
a) password b) school c) presentation d) information

4 Remember to be .... Don't copy information.
a) impolite b) quiet c) amazing d) respectful

5 Chameleons are the same color .... the place where they are.
a) as b) of c) with d) by

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

chameleon – websites – password – information – logged

Adel is making a presentation about desert animals. He needs some more ....(1)........ . He needs to look at many ....(2)........... . He ....(3)........... into the school library website this morning. He created a new ....(4)........... . The school library is really helpful.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Nadeen is doing her homework about chameleons. She needs to do some research about them. She logs into the school library website and looks at some useful websites. The chameleon is a kind of lizards. Chameleons are interesting animals. They live in Africa, Asia, and Europe in forests and deserts. They eat insects and leaves. Their eyes are amazing. They can see all around. Their color can be yellow, brown, red, black, or green; they can change their color according to the place where they are.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of text is Nadeen's ....

a) class b) homework c) family d) favorite animal

2 Chameleons eat insects and ....

a) deserts b) forests c) leaves d) animals

Answer the following questions:

3 How does Nadeen get information about chameleons?

....

4 Where do chameleons live?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 yara knows some great websites

....

2 What are you doing Dalia

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"A presentation about chameleons"

do research – school library – chameleons are amazing

....

....

....

....

Study Lesson 2

A Staying safe online

البقاء آمنًا على الإنترنت

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main Vocabulary

safe (adj.)	آمن	ideas	أفكار	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
creative (adj.)	مبدع	bullying	التنمر	adult	شخص بالغ

Extra Vocabulary

devices	أجهزة	thoughts	أفكار / معتقدات	personal information	معلومات شخصية
interesting (adj.)	شيق/مثير	scary (adj.)	مخيف	stupid (adj.)	غبي
quickly	بسرعة	late (adj.)	متأخر	ugly (adj.)	بشع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
share	يشارك	shared	talk	يتحدث	talked
contact	يتصل	contacted	tag	يشير إلى شخص في صورة	tagged
bully	يتنمر	bullied	accept	يقبل	accepted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	learn	يتعلم	learnt/learned
know	يعرف	knew	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

share ideas	يشارك الأفكار	have fun	يستمتع
make/be friends	يكون صداقات	keep my password secret	يحتفظ بكلمة المرور سرًّا
turn off	يطفئ	check with an adult	تحقق من الأمر مع شخص بالغ
online bullying	التنمر عبر الإنترنت	That's horrible!	هذا مريع!
talk online	يتحدث عبر الإنترنت	say sorry	يعبر عن أسفه
keep the message	يحتفظ بالرسالة	That's really cool!	هذا حقًّا رائع!

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن الحروف (cial) تُنطق /ʃəl/ (شال) كما في (social).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (gh) لا ينطقان "silent" في كلمة (thoughts).

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:



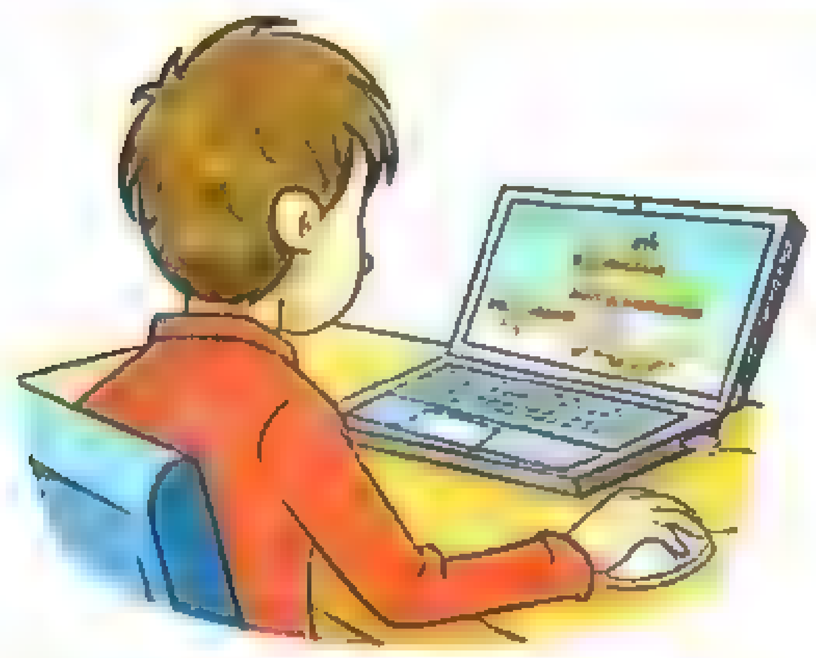
"Social media" is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information and have fun.

«وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى» هى عندما نستخدم أجهزة الكمبيوتر والأجهزة الأخرى لمشاركة الأفكار والخواطر والمعلومات والاستمتاع.



Pros of social media

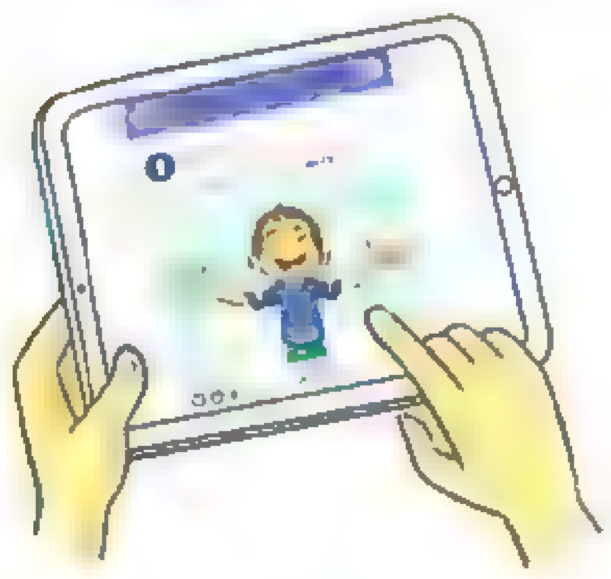
1



You can have fun.

يمكنك أن تستمتع بوقتك.

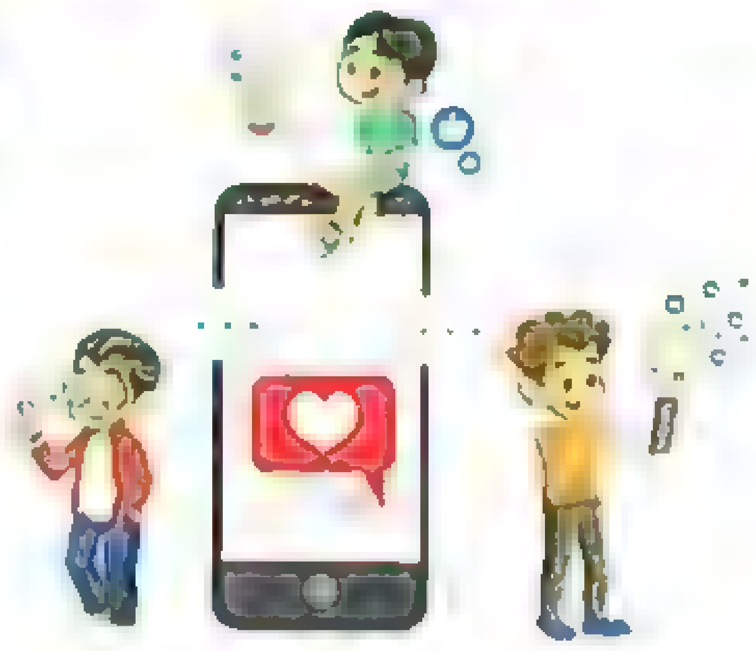
2



You can share photos.

يمكنك مشاركة الصور.

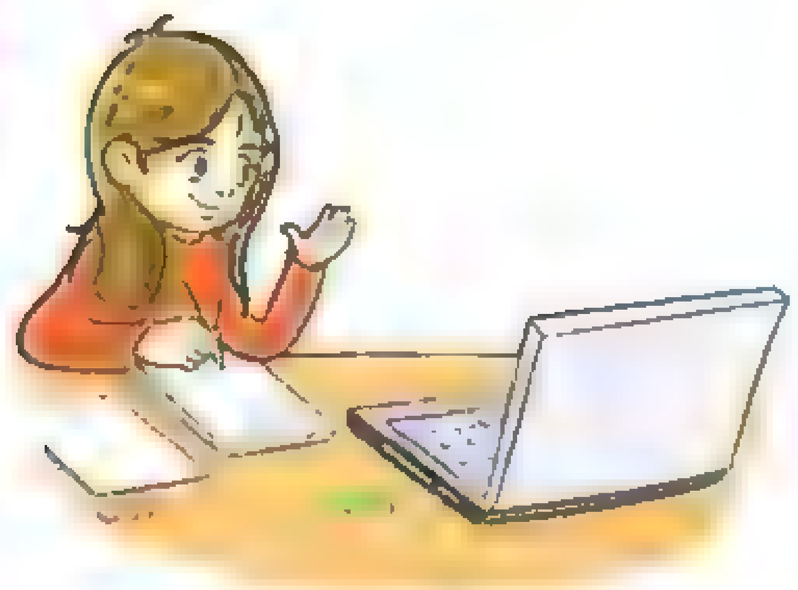
3



You can talk to friends and family.

يمكنك التحدث مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.

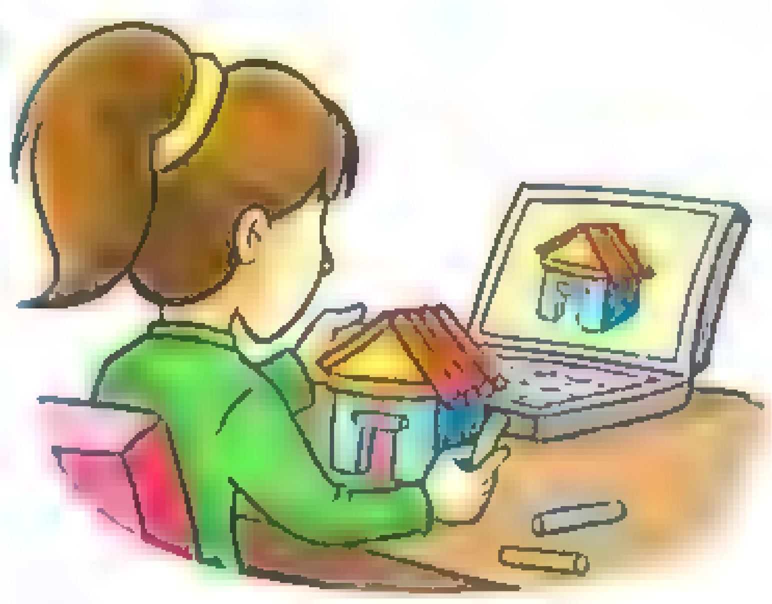
4



You can find information for your homework.

يمكنك العثور على معلومات لواجبك المنزلى.

5



You can be creative.

يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا.

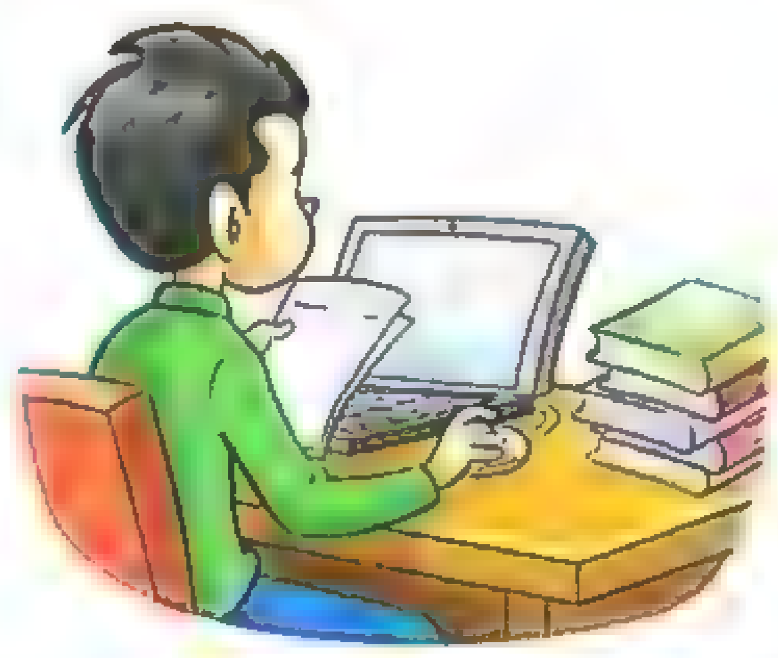
6



You can play games.

يمكنك لعب ألعاب.

7

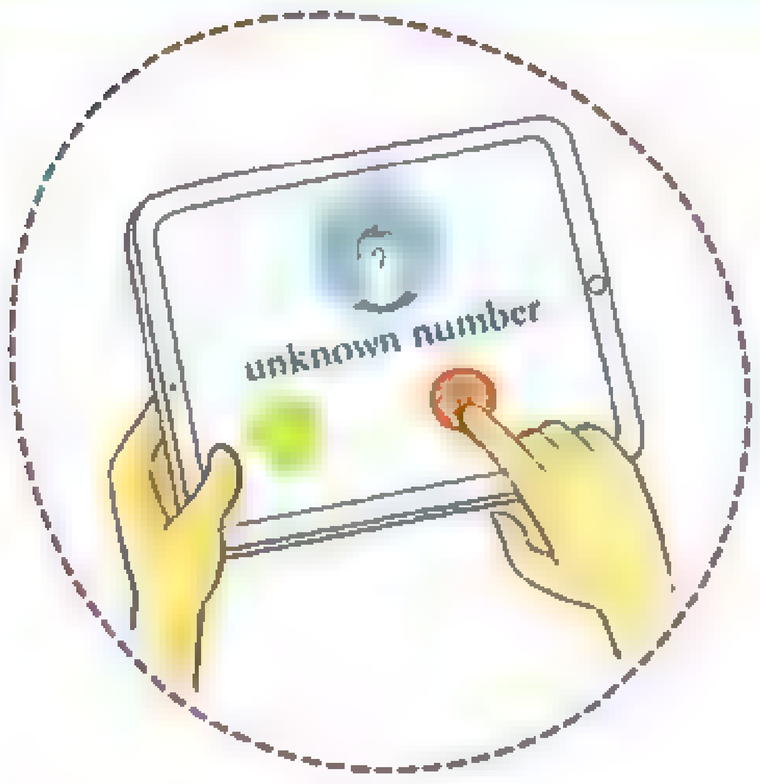


You can learn interesting things.

يمكنك تعلم أشياء شيقة.

Cons of social media

1



People you don't know can contact you.

يمكن للأشخاص الذين لا تعرفهم الاتصال بك.

2



People can tag you in photos when you don't want them to.

يمكن للأشخاص الإشارة إليك فى الصور عندما لا تريدهم أن يفعلوا ذلك.

3



People can take your personal information.

يمكن للناس أن يأخذوا معلوماتك الشخصية.

4



Some people can bully you.

يمكن لبعض الأشخاص أن يتنمروا عليك.

Check point

1 What is social media?

....

2 Mention two good things about social media.

....

Online bullying

التنمر عبر الإنترنت

Listening script

Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Wael, you know I started at the new school?

وائل، هل تعلم أنى بدأت فى المدرسة الجديدة؟



Yes! Is it nice?

نعم! هل هى جيدة؟



Yes, but I had a problem with online bullying. There was a boy in my class, Sherif, who was sending me messages.

نعم ، لكن لدى مشكلة مع التنمر عبر الإنترنت. كان هناك ولد فى صفى، شريف، كان يرسل لى رسائل.



What did he say?

ماذا قال؟



He said I was stupid and no one liked me.

قال إننى غبى ولم يحبنى أحد.



That's horrible! Did you tell someone?

هذا فظيع! هل أخبرت أحدا؟



Yes, my dad. He went to the school and talked to my teacher. He showed my teacher the messages from Sherif.

نعم، أبى. ذهب إلى المدرسة وتحدث إلى معلمتى، وأطلع معلمتى على رسائل شريف.



Wael



What did your teacher do?

ماذا فعلت معلمتك؟



Magdy

She spoke to Sherif and Sherif's parents. They all stopped the bullying. They said I shouldn't talk to Sherif online.

تحدثت مع شريف ووالديه. لقد أوقفوا التنمر جميعًا.
قالوا إننى لا يجب أن أتحدث إلى شريف عبر الإنترنت.



Wael



And Sherif?

وشريف؟



Magdy

He said sorry to me. But I feel much happier now! I know what I should do about online bullying now – keep the messages and tell an adult quickly.

قال آسفًا لى. لكنى أشعر بسعادة أكبر الآن! أعرف ما يجب علىَّ فعله الآن حيال التنمر عبر الإنترنت - احتفظ بالرسائل وأخبر شخصًا بالغًا بسرعة.



Wael



That's really cool! When are you coming to see me?

هذا رائع حقًّا! متى سوف تأتى لترانى؟

B Language Focus

Giving advice: إعطاء النصيحة:

Should:

We use "should" to talk about things that are good for us to do.
نستخدم «ينبغي أن» للتحدث عن الأشياء الجيدة لنقوم بها.

Subject (الفاعل) + should + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ....



I should keep my personal information secret.
ينبغي أن أحتفظ بمعلوماتي الشخصية سرية.

Shouldn't:

We use "shouldn't" to talk about things that are bad for us to do.
نستخدم «لا ينبغي أن» للتحدث عن الأشياء السيئة التي لا يجب أن نفعلها.

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ....



I shouldn't give my password to anyone who asks.
لا ينبغي أن أعطي كلمة المرور الخاصة بي لأي شخص يطلبها.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 I (should – shouldn't – can't – doesn't) use strong passwords.
2 I (should – aren't – shouldn't – doesn't) tell everyone my birthday and my phone number.
3 I should (used – uses – use – using) safe websites.
4 You should (tell – tells – telling – told) your parents when someone bullies you online.
5 You (shouldn't – can't – are – should) keep your password secret.
6 You should (was – is – be – am) careful when you're online.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 My cousin Adam is .... years old.
(a. 3 – b. 13 – c. 31 – d. 33)

2 He has an account on ....
(a. school library – b. website – c. social media – d. classroom)

3 He likes to share .... with other people.
(a. toys – b. games – c. passwords – d. information)

4 Adam is always .... when he is online.
(a. busy – b. noisy – c. careful – d. quiet)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 Mobile phones, computers, and tablets are ....
a) games b) devices c) toys d) places

2 I can .... my friends in photos online.
a) tag b) take c) play d) talk

3 We use computers to .... information and have fun.
a) do b) share c) bully d) cut

4 If you have a problem with online ...., talk to an adult.
a) shopping b) information c) website d) bullying

5 Social media can make you .... It can give you new ideas.
a) safe b) creative c) stupid d) ugly

6 People you don't know can .... you on social media.
a) play b) contact c) share d) take

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

class – sorry – share – bullying – messages

Magdy started at the new school three months ago. He had a problem with online ....(1)............ . There was a boy in his ....(2)............ called Ali who was sending him bad ....(3)............ . Magdy talked to his dad. Magdy's dad talked to the teacher. Ali said ....(4)............ to Magdy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

"Social media" is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information and have fun. There are some pros of social media. You can talk to friends and family. You can find information for your homework. You can also be creative and play games. On the other hand, there are some cons of social media. People can tag you in photos when you don't want them to. People can take your personal information. Some people can bully you.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) computers b) games c) social media d) information

2 The word "pros" means .... things.

a) bad b) good c) sad d) loud

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is social media?

....

4 What are the cons of social media?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

5

1 You should (keeps) .... your password secret.

2 We (shouldn't) .... turn our phones off at night.

3 I shouldn't (telling) .... everyone my phone number.

4 I (shouldn't) .... keep my personal information secret.

5 You (should) .... make new friends online.

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Online bullying"

sent me messages – told my teacher – said sorry

....

....

....

....

Study

Lesson 1

Story

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

neighbor	جار	computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
problem	مشكلة	unhealthy (adj.)	غير صحى

Extra vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم	son	ابن	other	آخر
apartment	شقة	together	معًا	lovely (adj.)	رائعة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظـمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
ask	يسأل	asked	answer	يجيب	answered
love	يحب	loved	stop	يتوقف عن	stopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met	know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	go outside	يذهب للخارج
I agree.	أنا أوافقك الرأى.	That's a lovely idea.	هذه فكرة جميلة.

Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) فى كلمة (neighbor) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.

Vocabulary Check

- بعض الكلمات متشابهة فى النطق لكنها تختلف فى المعنى والهجاء.

e.g. (son ابن) (sun شمس)

- يمكنك إضافة البادئة "un" فى بداية الكلمة للحصول على عكس المعنى.

e.g. healthy  صحى X unhealthy  غير صحى

happy  سعيد X unhappy  غير سعيد

How two neighbors helped each other كيف ساعدت الجارتان بعضهما البعض

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



(The Beginning) Who was sad?

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad.

التقت هدير بجارتها رانيا فى المطعم. كانت رانيا حزينة.

(The Middle) What's the problem?

Hadeer asked, "What's the matter, my friend?" Rania answered, "It's my children, Nancy and Nader. They love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. I don't know what to do"

Hadeer said, "Yes, it is a problem. Tarek, my son, is the same. He often plays computer games. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do other things. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park." Raina said, "Yes, I agree."

سألت هدير: «ما الأمر يا صديقتى؟» أجابت رانيا: «إنهم أطفالى، نانسى ونادر. هما يحبان لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. هما لا يؤديان واجبهما المنزلى. هما لا يخرجان. أنا لا أعلم ماذا أفعل».

قالت هدير: «نعم، إنها مشكلة. طارق، ابنى، مثلهما. كثيرًا ما يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. ذلك غير صحى حقًا. ينبغى أن يتوقف الأطفال عن اللعب بعد ساعة. ينبغى عليهم أن يفعلوا أشياء أخرى. ينبغى عليهم أن يلعبوا مع أصدقائهم. ينبغى عليهم أن يذهبوا إلى الحديقة». قالت رانيا: «نعم، أنا أوافقك الرأى».

(The End) What's the solution?

Hadeer said, "Let's find games where they can play with friends. Tarek would love to play more with Nader. Can Nader come to our apartment? They can play together and have fun." Rania said, "That's a lovely idea. And they can go to the park together." "Thank you, Hadeer!"

قالت هدير: «لنجد ألعابًا حيث يمكنهم اللعب مع أصدقائهم. سيحب طارق أن يلعب أكثر مع نادر. هل يمكن أن يأتى نادر لشقتنا؟ بإمكانهما اللعب معًا والاستمتاع بوقتهما». قالت رانيا: «هذه فكرة جميلة. وبإمكانهما الذهاب للحديقة معًا. شكرًا لك يا هدير».

Check point

1 Where did Hadeer meet Rania? ....

2 What's wrong with Rania's children? ....

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1. Playing computer games for too much time isn't ....
   (a. bad – b. healthy – c. unhealthy – d. dangerous)
2. They don't have enough .... to do homework or play outside.
   (a. time – b. money – c. place – d. pens)
3. Children should .... playing after one hour.
   (a. do – b. stop – c. continue – d. go)
4. They .... do other things like playing sports.
   (a. shouldn't – b. mustn't – c. aren't – d. should)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. We went out to have our lunch in a ....
   a) class b) room c) restaurant d) museum
2. Playing too much computer games is ....
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) lovely
3. Adel is my .... He is 13 years old.
   a) father b) grandfather c) son d) daughter
4. I live in an apartment next to my friend Sarah. She is my ....
   a) daughter b) neighbor c) child d) son

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

unhealthy – computer – outside – inside – homework

Rania and Hadeer are neighbors. They met at the restaurant. Rania said that her children love playing ....(1).......... games. They don't do their ....(2).......... . They don't go ....(3).......... . Hadeer thinks it's ....(4).......... for children to play video games for more than one hour.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Noha and Nahla are neighbors and friends. They met at the family club, but Noha was sad. Nahla wanted to know why her friend looked sad. Noha said that her children Habiba and Sama love playing computer games, which is really unhealthy. They don't have time to do their homework or go outside. Nahla suggested inviting Noha's children to her apartment where they can play with her children and have fun.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 Noha looked .... when she met Nahla.

a) happy b) excited c) bored d) sad

2 The word "neighbors" means ....

a) sisters
b) at the same school
c) live next to each other
d) at the same work

Answer the following questions:

3 Where did the friends meet?

....

4 What did Nahla suggest?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

That s a lovely idea

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Rania has a problem."

too much computer games – don't go outside – unhealthy

....

....

....

....

Study

Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

pros	إيجابيات	cons	سلبيات
team	فريق	leaflet	منشور
bullying online	التنمر عن طريق الإنترنت	poster	ملصق

Extra vocabulary

reason	سبب	screen	شاشة	outside	بالخارج
problem	مشكلة	prize	جائزة	lives	حيوات (جمع حياة)
headings	عناوين	advice	نصيحة	website	موقع إلكتروني

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
solve	يحل	solved	interview	يحــاور	interviewed

Expressions and Phrases

bad for	سيئ لـ	good for	جيد لـ
look at	ينظر لـ	make friends	يكون صداقات
at the end	في النهاية	say/ think/ believe that	يعتقد بأن
In my opinion	في رأيي	on the other hand	على الجانب الآخر
do more research	يقوم بالمزيد منا لبحث	find out about	يكتشف بخصوص
look for help	يطلب المساعدة	stay safe online	يبقى أمنًا عبر الإنترنت

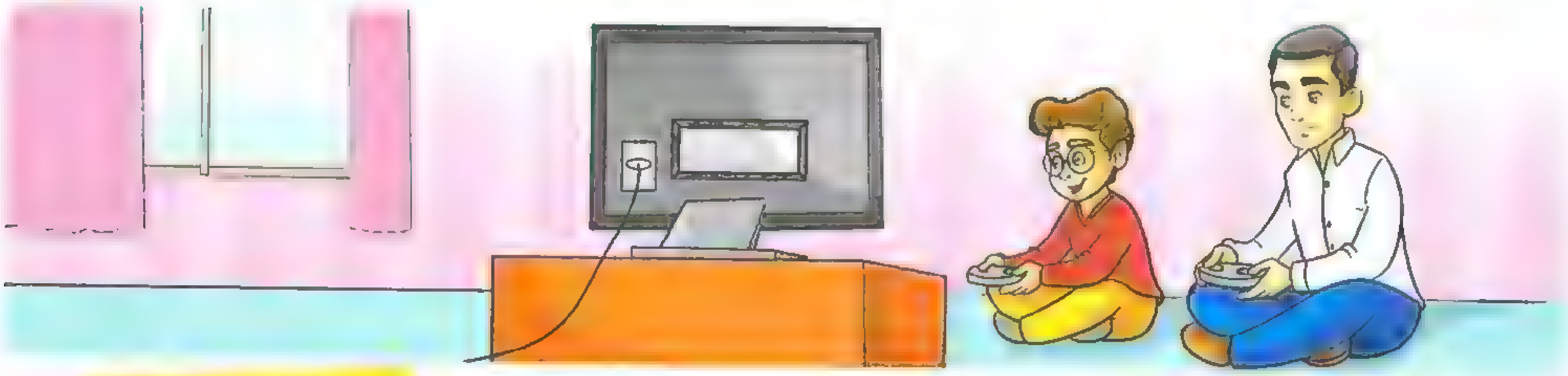
A Writing

Pros and cons of computer games

إيجابيات وسلبيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Paragraph 1

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

يقول كثير من الناس إن ألعاب الكمبيوتر ضارة للأطفال. يمكن للأطفال قضاء ساعات طويلة على أجهزة الكمبيوتر والتابلت الخاصة بهم. إنهم ينظرون إلى الشاشة ولا يذهبون للخارج أو يؤدون واجباتهم المدرسية. يقول الآباء إن هذا ليس صحيًا لأطفالهم.

Paragraph 2

But, on the other hand, there are some reasons why computer games are good for children. In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

ولكن، من ناحية أخرى، هناك بعض الأسباب التى تجعل ألعاب الكمبيوتر مفيدة للأطفال. فى بعض الألعاب، يحتاج الأطفال إلى حل المشكلات. تحتاج بعض ألعاب الكمبيوتر إلى فِرَق، لذلك يكوّن الأطفال صداقات ويلعبون مع عائلاتهم.

Paragraph 3

I really like computer games where I go outside. I go with my uncle and my friends. We like these games because you find a prize at the end. In my opinion, we can enjoy games, but we need to have other things in our lives like sports and time with our family.

أنا حقًا أحب ألعاب الكمبيوتر التى أذهب فيها للخارج. أذهب مع عمى وأصدقائى. نحن نحب هذه الألعاب لأنك تجد جائزة فى النهاية. فى رأيى، يمكننا الاستمتاع بالألعاب، ولكننا بحاجة إلى أشياء أخرى فى حياتنا مثل الرياضة وقضاء الوقت مع عائلتنا.

Note

- عند الكتابة عن موضوع يتضمن وجهات نظر مختلفة سلبية وإيجابية، فلابد من استخدام التعبيرات الآتية لعرض وجهات النظر المختلفة:

People say/ think/ believe that	للتعبير عن وجهة نظر عامة الناس
On the other hand	للتعبير عن وجهة نظر مختلفة عن عامة الناس
In my opinion	للتعبير عن وجهة نظر الكاتب الشخصية

B Project

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

What is a leaflet?

It is a small flat or folded sheet with a printed shape on one or both sides. It is used to provide information in an interesting way.

إنه ورقة صغيرة مسطحة أو مطوية بها شكل مطبوع على أحد الجانبين أو كليهما. يتم استخدامها لتوفير المعلومات بطريقة شيقة.

How to stay safe online:

كيف تبقى آمنًا عبر الإنترنت:

Give advice about bullying.
تقديم نصيحة بشأن التنمر.

Find out about bullying online.
تعرف على التنمر عبر الإنترنت.

Tell people about bullying online.
أخبر الناس عن التنمر عبر الإنترنت.

Make posters or leaflets and put them around the school.
اصنع ملصقات أو منشورات وقم بوضعها حول المدرسة.

Talk to teachers and parents.
تحدث مع المعلمين وأولياء الأمور.



Research البحث	What to do ما تفعله	What to do more ما تفعله أكثر
a) Search for information on the internet. أ) ابحث عن المعلومات على شبكة الإنترنت.	a) Tell students to stay safe online! أ) اطلب من الطلاب البقاء آمنين على الإنترنت!	a) Make a leaflet or a poster. أ) اصنع نشرة أو ملصقًا.
b) Interview teachers. ب) قابل المعلمين.	b) Give a presentation about being safe online. ب) قدم عرضًا تقديميًّا حول الأمان عبر الإنترنت.	b) Talk to teachers and parents. ب) تحدث مع المعلمين وأولياء الأمور.
c) Find out which websites are safe. ج) تعرف على المواقع الآمنة.		

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 In some games, children need to .... problems.
(a. do – b. make – c. solve – d. have)

2 Some computer games need teams, so children make ....
(a. family – b. homework – c. friends – d. research)

3 I also like computer games where I go ....
(a. inside – b. outside – c. away – d. up)

4 We like these games because you find a .... at the end.
(a. sports – b. posters – c. prize – d. tablets)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 5

1 Children can .... many hours on their computers.

a) do b) solve c) spend d) sleep

2 Parents say it's .... for children to spend many hours on their tablets.

a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) exciting

3 In some games, children need to solve ....

a) problems b) parents c) tablets d) computers

4 I really like games where I can go .... and play.

a) inside b) teams c) sports d) outside

5 Some computer games need ...., so children make friends.

a) devices b) time c) teams d) screens

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

bad – good – solve – spend – outside

People say that computer games are bad for the children. Some computer games can be bad because children can ....(1)............ many hours looking at the screen. They don't go ....(2)............ or do homework. On the other hand, some computer games can be ....(3)............ . They help children ....(4)............ problems.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

It's important to know the pros and cons of playing computer games. Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework, which is unhealthy for them. On the other hand, there are some pros of playing computer games. In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games also need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The word "cons" means .... things.

a) good b) healthy c) great d) bad

2 Spending many hours on computers and tablets is ....

a) good b) healthy c) unhealthy d) creative

B Answer the following questions:

3 How can computer games help us?

....

4 Summarize the pros of computer games in two sentences

....

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 children don t go outside or do their homework.

....

2 in some games, children need to solve problems

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Pros and cons of computer games"

In my opinion ..... – solve problems – On the other hand .....

....

....

....

....

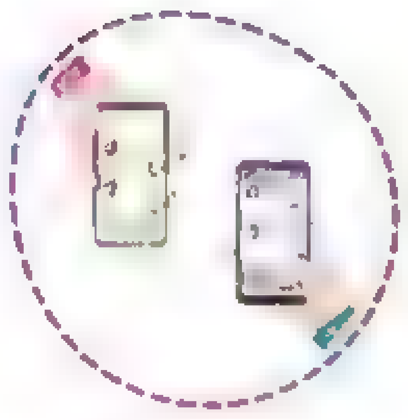
Unit 10 REVIEW

Vocabulary

Social media



message



chat



password



do research



log into



chameleon



website

Language Focus

Should:

Subject (الفاعل) + should + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ....



I should keep my personal information secret.

Shouldn't:

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ....



I shouldn't give my password to anyone who asks.

How to be safe online:

Pros and Cons of Social Media

Pros

- You can have fun.
- You can share photos.
- You can talk to friends and family.
- You can find information for homework.
- You can be creative.
- You can play games.
- You can learn interesting things.

Cons

- People you don't know can contact you.
- People can tag you in photos when you don't want them to.
- People can take your personal information.
- Some people can bully you.

Unit 10 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

يراسل/مراسلة	....	يحادث/محادثة	....
كلمة المرور	....	يجرى بحثًا	....
يقوم بتسجيل دخول	....	حرباء	....
موقع إلكترونى	....	يعرف	....

Lesson 2

يشارك الأفكار	....	يتواصل	....
يشير إلى شخص فى	....	صورة	....
أفكار ومعتقدات	....	يتنمر	....
مبدع	....	مخيف	....
عبر الإنترنت	....	أجهزة	....
مشكلة	....	غبى	....
شخص بالغ	....	بشع	....

Lesson 3

ألعاب	....	مطعم	....
كمبيوتر	....	رائعة	....
جار	....	شقة	....
غير صحى	....	معًا	....
مشكلة	....	ابن	....

Lessons 4 & 5

سلبيات	....	جائزة	....
إيجابيات	....	موقع إلكترونى	....
منشور	....	نصيحة	....
فريق	....	عناوين	....
بالخارج	....	النشر عبر الإنترنت	....
شاشة	....	ملصق	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME

How to write about a school homework / presentation

- Habiba is doing (homework / a presentation) about + موضوع الواجب المدرسى
- She needs + عمل مزيد من البحث
- She knows + الكثير من المواقع المفيدة
- She made a password to log into + مكتبة المدرسة أو موقع الكتروني
- She looked at websites to find nice pictures.

Habiba is doing homework about polar bears. She needs to do a lot of research. She knows many useful websites. She made a password to log into the school's library. She looked at websites to find nice pictures. She is respectful and she doesn't copy information.

How to write about social media:

- Social media is when + تعريفها
- We can + أنشطة يمكن فعلها
- However, + مساوئ وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas and thoughts. We can have fun, share photos or talk to friends and family on social media. You can be creative too. However, people you don't know can contact you.

How to write about pros and cons of computer games:

- People say that + رأى الناس فى ألعاب الكمبيوتر
- Some computer games can be bad because + عيوب ألعاب الكمبيوتر
- On the other hand, some computer games can be good because + مميزات ألعاب الكمبيوتر
- In my opinion, + رأيى فى ألعاب الكمبيوتر

People say that computer games are bad for the children. Some computer games can be bad because children can spend many hours looking at the screen and they don't go outside or do homework. On the other hand, some computer games can be good because they help children solve problems. In my opinion, I really like computer games where I go outside.

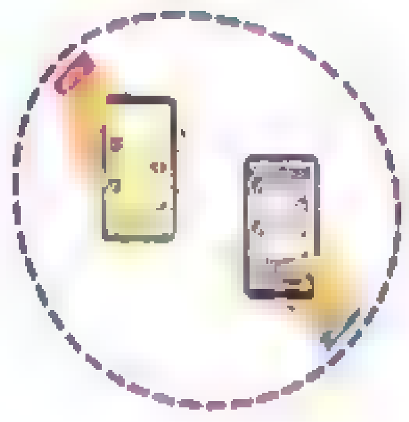
لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

1 Match the words with the photos:

1 message 2 chat 3 password 4 do research 5 log in








2 Read and choose (a) or (b):

1 

a: You should make new friends online.

b: You should accept to be friends only with people you know.

2 

a: I should keep my password secret.

b: I should give my password to anyone who asks.

3 

a: I should tell everyone my birthday and my phone number.

b: I should keep my personal information secret.

3 Make sentences with (should or shouldn't):

1 You .... have a very strong password.

2 You .... only speak to people you know online.

3 You .... speak to strangers on the internet.

4 You .... be an online bully.

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 10

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (6)

1 It's important to be .... online.
(a. secret – b. safe – c. noisy – d. fast)

2 You should have strong ....
(a. names – b. passwords – c. websites – d. games)

3 It's also important to keep your passwords and personal information ....
(a. easy – b. secret – c. fast – d. slow)

4 Don't .... and don't be a bully.
(a. share – b. spend – c. talk – d. bully)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 They need to create a .... to log into a school library.

a) password	b) website	c) message	d) chat

2 Don't copy information. Be ....

a) healthy	b) respectful	c) bully	d) stupid

3 I need to .... more research.

a) make	b) do	c) have	d) go

4 In some computer games, children need to .... problems.

a) create	b) solve	c) spend	d) share

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

chatted – password – websites – logged – worked

Ramy and Ola were making a presentation about chameleons. They ....(1)............ hard together. Ramy ....(2)............ into the school library to know more information. Ola looked at some ....(3)............ about chameleons. They ....(4)............ on their tablets and had the information they needed to make the presentation.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

I'm Nour. I use social media almost every day. Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share information and thoughts. I can find information for my homework online. I can talk to my friends and family on social media. I can share photos with my friends. My teacher always says it's important to be safe online. We shouldn't contact people we don't know. We should use strong passwords.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 We can share information and .... on social media.
a) computers b) devices c) thoughts d) passwords

2 My .... says we should be safe online.
a) mom b) teacher c) family d) device

Answer the following questions:

3 What is social media?

....

4 How can we be safe online?

....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 You (shouldn't) .... sleep early because it's healthy.

2 I shouldn't (gives) .... my password to anyone who asks.

3 She should (kept) .... her password secret.

4 I (should) .... tell everyone my birthday.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

Habiba and heba share photos on social media

....

7 Write a text of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Pros of social media"

- What is social media?
- What can you do on social media?

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★☆☆

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	[illegible]	Well done

Unit 10 AL-AZHAR CORNER

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 Dalia is doing ....about chameleons.

(homework – a presentation – a project)

2 Dalia thinks ....are amazing.

(lizards – pets – chameleons)

3 Chameleons can change ....

(color – hair – homes)

2 Read and complete the dialog:

right – do – messages – online

Magdy : I had a problem with .... bullying.

Reem : What did you ....?

Magdy : I kept the .... and told an adult.

Reem : That's ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 What should I do to stay (safe – dangerous – bully) online?

2 I want to chat with my friend so I sent her a (log in – password – message).

3 You (should – shouldn't – can) share your personal information. It's not safe.

4 (Chameleons – Phones – Devices) are a kind of lizards.

5 Hamza should (play – played – playing) with some friends outside.

Unit 11

What can we do?

ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل؟



Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Al-Azhar | Answers 100% Q&A

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
  - listen, read, research, and write about transportation.
  - practice making sentences with "need" and "must".
  - learn about different transportation.
  - read and listen to a short story.
  - learn about and say words that begin with "tr" and "cr" and diphthongs ai, oa, and ea.
  - write about how to stop air pollution.
  - research and make a leaflet about road safety.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن وسائل المواصلات.
  - يتدرب على تكوين جمل باستخدام «يحتاج» و «يجب».
  - يتعلم عن وسائل المواصلات المختلفة.
  - يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
  - يتعلم وينطق الكلمات التي تبدأ بـ "tr" و "cr" والأصوات المركبة ai و oa و ea.
  - يكتب عن كيفية إيقاف تلوث الهواء.
  - يبحث ليقوم بعمل منشور عن السلامة على الطرق.

- The Ghan in Australia is the longest passenger train in the world. It is about 774 meters long. The train has up to 44 * passenger carriages.

* passenger carriages عربات الركاب

- * The Cairo Monorail in Egypt will be the longest monorail system in the world. We also have different public transportation in Egypt such as trains, buses, and taxis.

* The Monorail * قطار كهربائي سريع (مونوريل)

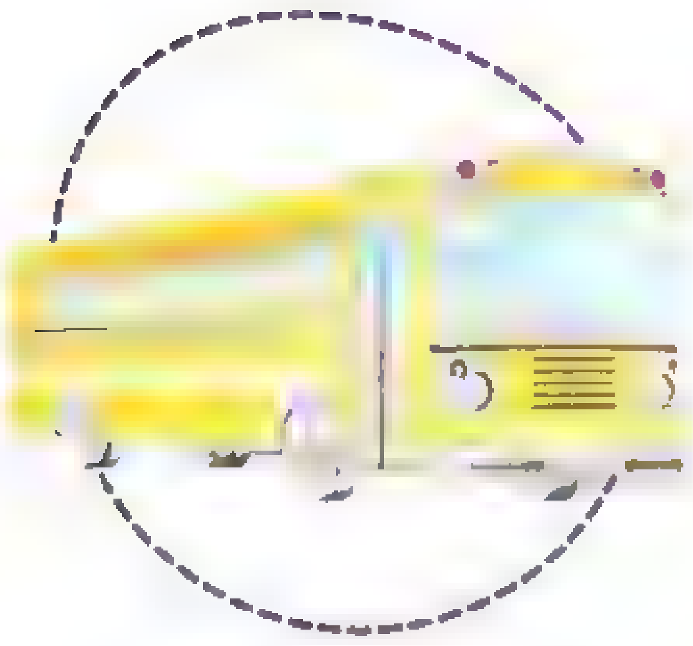
Study Lesson 1

A Transportation

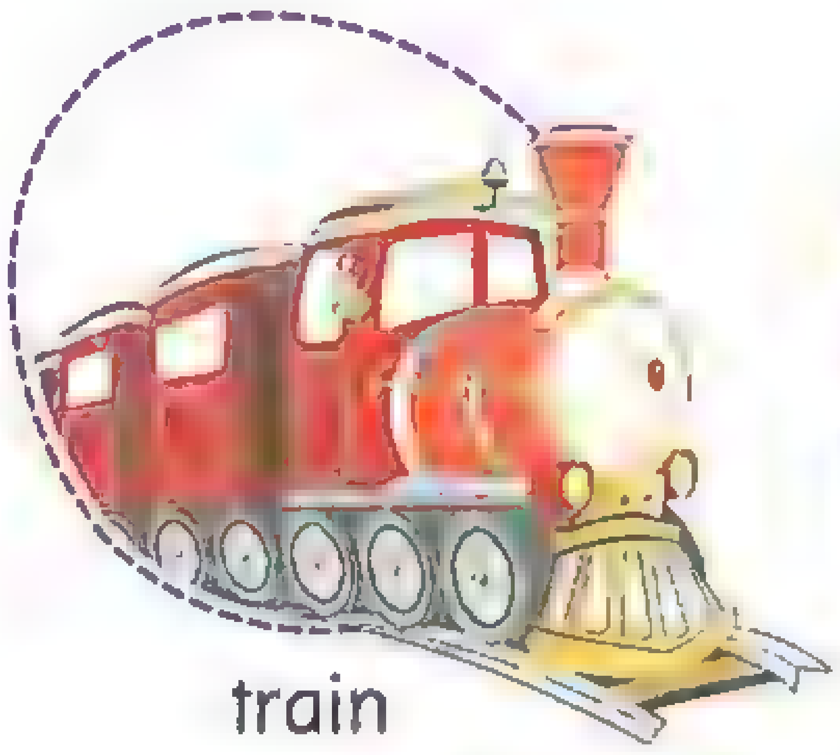
وسائل المواصلات

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

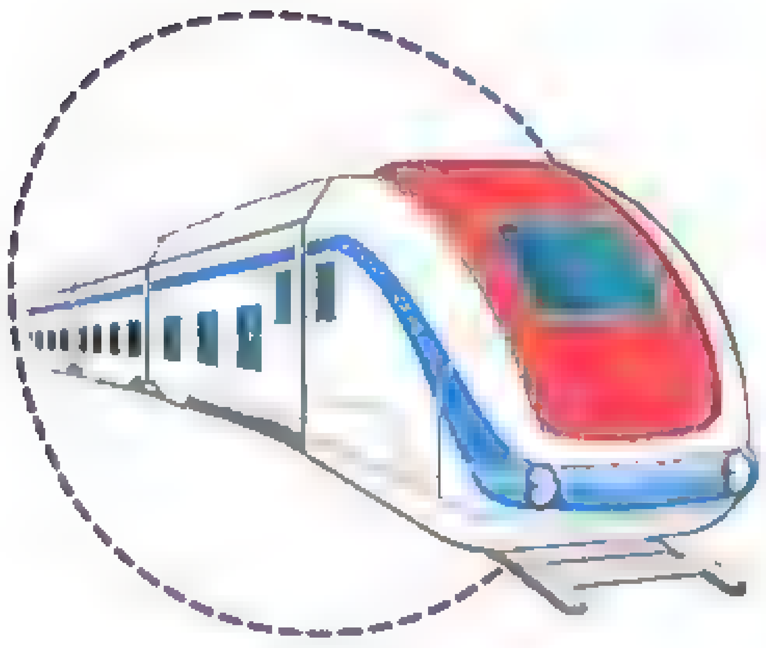
Main vocabulary

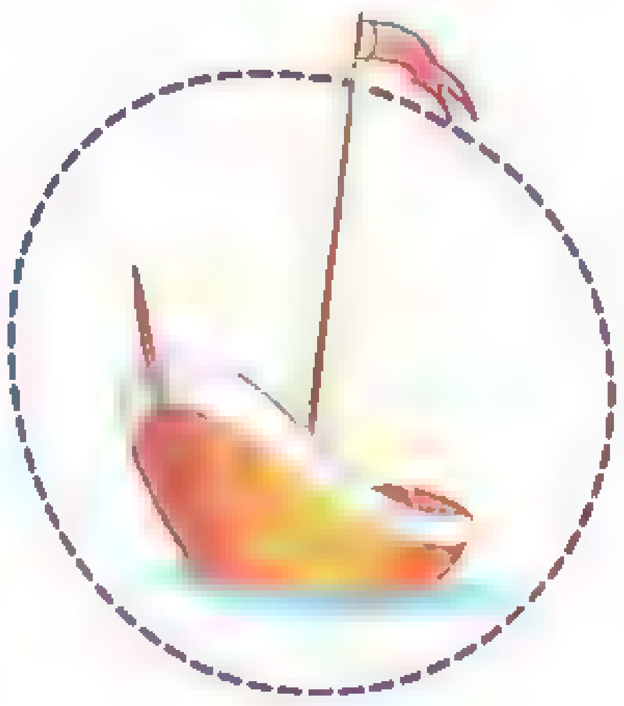

bus
أتوبيس


car
سيارة

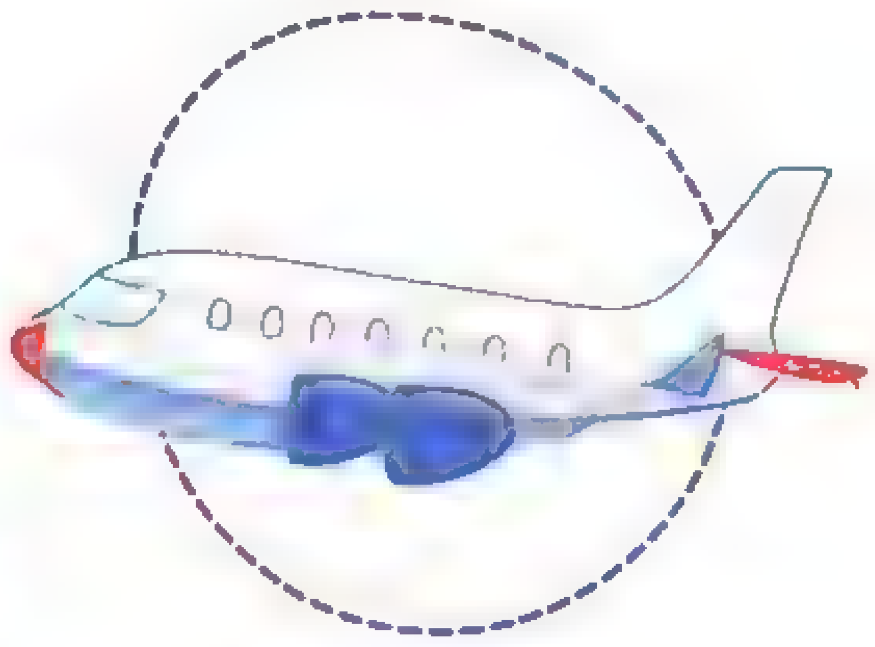

train
قطار


taxi
تاكسى


metro
مترو الأنفاق


boat
مركب


ship
سفينة

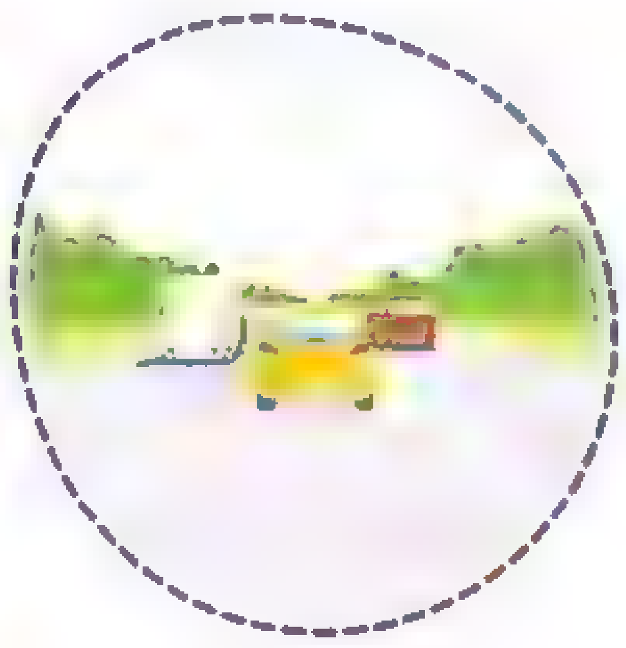

plane
طائرة


airport
مطار


rail
سكة حديد


air
الهواء/الجو


water
مياه


road
طريق

Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) تُنطق /ʃən/ (شن) كما فى (transportation).

Extra vocabulary

station	محطة	through	خلال/عبر	vehicle	مركبة
quiz	اختبار قصير	public (adj.)	عام	cool (adj.)	رائع
late (adj.)	متأخر	town	مدينة صغيرة	far (adj.)	بعيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	interview	يجرى مقابلة	interviewed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	ride	يركب	rode
come	يأتي	came	meet	يقابل	met

Expressions and Phrases

do a quiz	يقوم باختبار	get to	يصل إلى
around the city	حول المدينة	catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس
take the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس	Have a nice day!	أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا!

Vocabulary Check

- بعض الكلمات يختلف معناها طبقًا للنص:

e.g. take - catch

take an umbrella	يأخذ شمسية	take a bus	يستقل أتوبيسًا
catch a butterfly	يمسك فراشة	catch a bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 I can't go on (trains – ships – cars – planes). I'm scared of water.

2 Cars go on (rails – air – water – roads).

3 I like to travel by (train – boat – plane – bus). It's exciting to go through air.

4 Both trains and (cars – metros – planes – buses) go on rails.

Listening script 53

Listen, read, and role-play:

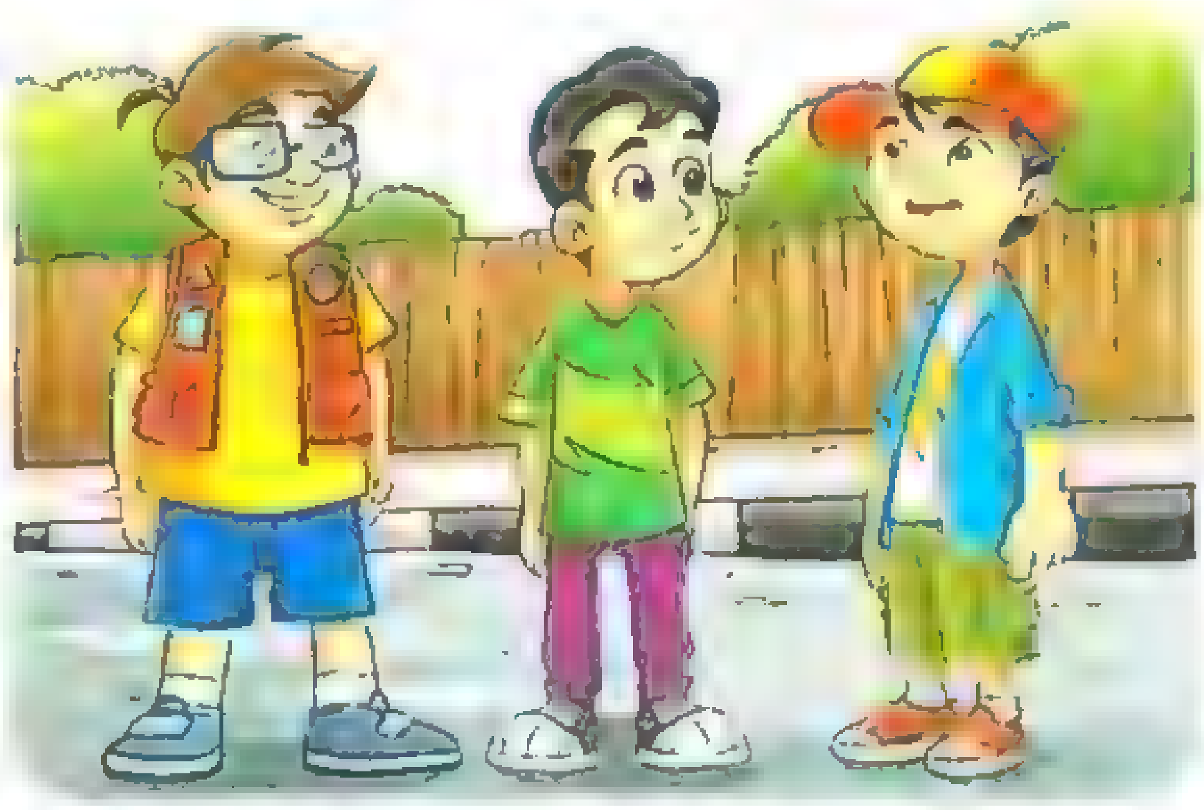
استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Seleem: Hi Maged! I'm doing a class quiz about public transportation.

مرحبًا ماجد! أنا أقوم بعمل اختبار قصير فى الفصل حول وسائل المواصلات العامة.

Maged: Cool!

رائع!



Seleem: How do you get to school?

كيف تصل إلى المدرسة؟

Maged: I come to school on foot.

آتى إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.

Seleem: Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

هل ركبت أتوبيسًا أو مترو الأنفاق من قبل؟

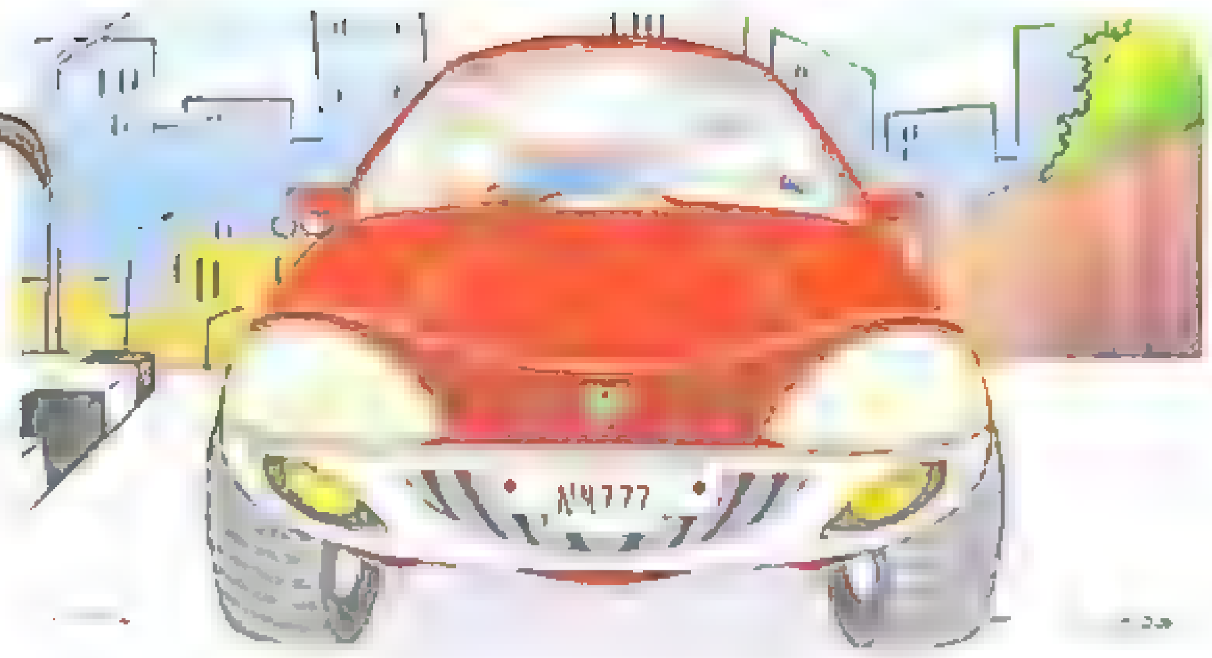
Maged: Only if I'm late. I like to come on foot so I can meet my friends.

فقط إذا تأخرت. أحب أن آتى سيرًا على الأقدام حتى أتمكن من مقابلة أصدقائى.



Seleem: Thanks! Ramy, how do you get to school?

شكرًا! رامى ، كيف تذهب إلى المدرسة؟



Ramy

I come by car with my dad.

آتى بالسيارة مع والدى.

Seleem

Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

هل ركبت الأتوبيس أو مترو الأنفاق من قبل؟



Ramy

Yes, if my dad is not in town, I take the bus. I like it.

نعم، إذا لم يكن والدى فى المدينة ، فأنا أستقل الأتوبيس، أحبه.

Seleem

Why?

لماذا؟

Ramy

We travel slowly and I can see the city.

نسافر ببطء ويمكننى أن أرى المدينة.

Seleem

Do you ever come to school on foot?

هل سبق لك أن أتيت إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام؟

Ramy

No, my house is very far from the school.

لا ، بيتى بعيد جدًا عن المدرسة.

Seleem

Thanks! Have a nice day!

أشكرك! أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا!

Ramy

You too!

وأنت أيضًا!

B Language Focus

Prepositions with means of transportation

حروف الجر مع وسائل المواصلات

on

foot — water



I go to school on foot.

أذهب للمدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.

by

car — bus — train — ship — boat — plane



We travel to Aswan by train.

نسافر إلى أسوان بالقطار.

Notes

- When we travel by plane, we go through the air.
  عندما نسافر بالطائرة، نمر عبر الجو.
- When we travel by boat or ship, we are on the water.
  عندما نسافر بالقارب أو السفينة، نكون على الماء.
- When we travel by bus or car, we are on the road.
  عندما نسافر بالأتوبيس أو السيارة، نكون على الطريق.
- When we travel by train, we move on a rail under the vehicle.
  عندما نسافر بالقطار، نتحرك على سكة حديدية أسفل المركبة.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. We sometimes go to school (on – with – at – by) bus.
2. Hana always goes to the park (on – in – through – by) foot.
3. When we travel by boat, we are on the (road – water – rails – air).
4. When I travel (by – at – though – in) plane, I go through the air.
5. They often travel (on – in – by – with) car.
6. I don't like to travel by (foot – water – plane – rails).

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1 I get up early to .... the bus.

a) ride b) meet c) go d) catch

2 When we travel by train, we move on a/an ....

a) rail b) air c) road d) water

3 We go to the .... to travel by plane.

a) water b) airport c) station d) rail

4 I always go to school .... foot.

a) on b) in c) by d) at

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

take – make – roads – foot – rails

There are many types of transportation in my town. I live next to my school, so I often go there on ....(1)......... . When I go to the other side of the town, I ....(2)............. the bus. Buses move on ....(3)............. . When I travel to Cairo, I go by train. Trains move on ....(4)........... .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Seleem is doing a class quiz about public transportation. He asks his friends how they go to their schools. Maged lives near the school, so he goes to school on foot. Ramy goes by car with his dad. He only takes the bus when his dad is late for work. Nada likes to take the bus because it's where she can see the city. She never goes to school by metro because <u>it</u> is on the other side of the town.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) different schools b) public transportation

c) different quizzes d) different places

2 The underlined pronoun "<u>it</u>" refers to the ....

a) car b) taxi c) metro d) bus

Answer the following questions:

3 Why does Maged go to school on foot?

....

4 How does Ramy go to school?

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (6)

1 I like to go to school (by) .... foot.

2 We travel to Aswan (at) .... ship.

3 I go to the club (on) .... car with my dad.

4 They travel (in) .... water by boat.

5 I travel slowly (at) .... bus and I can see the city.

6 Moaz goes to the park (on) .... metro.

5 Punctuate the following: (2)

1 do you ever come to school on foot

....

2 thanks! Have a nice day

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Transportation"

doing a class quiz – go to school by – on foot

....

....

....

....

Study Lesson 2

A Road Safety

السلامة على الطرق

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

safe (adj.)	آمن	road	طريق
helmet	خوذة	seat belt	حزام أمان
light	ضوء	left	يسار
right	يمين	camel	جمل
straight	مستقيم	safely	بأمان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed	cross	يعبر	crossed
turn	ينعطف (يتجه)	turned	stop	يتوقف	stopped
wait	ينتظر	waited	park	يركن (السيارة/الدراجة)	parked

Expressions and Phrases

in danger	في خطر	cross the road	يعبر الطريق
go straight	يتجه للأمام (يذهب مباشرة)	wait for	ينتظر لـ ...

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) فى كلمة (right) / (light) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.

Vocabulary Check

- بعض الكلمات يختلف معناها طبقًا للنص:

e.g. right – park

We play in the park.	نلعب في الحديقة.	Don't park here.	ممنوع الوقوف هنا.
You are right.	أنت على حق.	Turn right.	انعطف يمينًا.

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

1



You need a helmet on your bike.

أنت بحاجة إلى خوذة على دراجتك.

2



You need a seat belt in your car.

أنت بحاجة إلى حزام أمان فى سيارتك.

3



You need a green light to cross the road.

أنت بحاجة إلى ضوء أخضر لعبور الطريق.

4



You need to look left and right.

أنت بحاجة للنظر إلى اليسار واليمين.

5



There are sometimes camels on the road.

توجد فى بعض الأحيان جمال على الطريق.

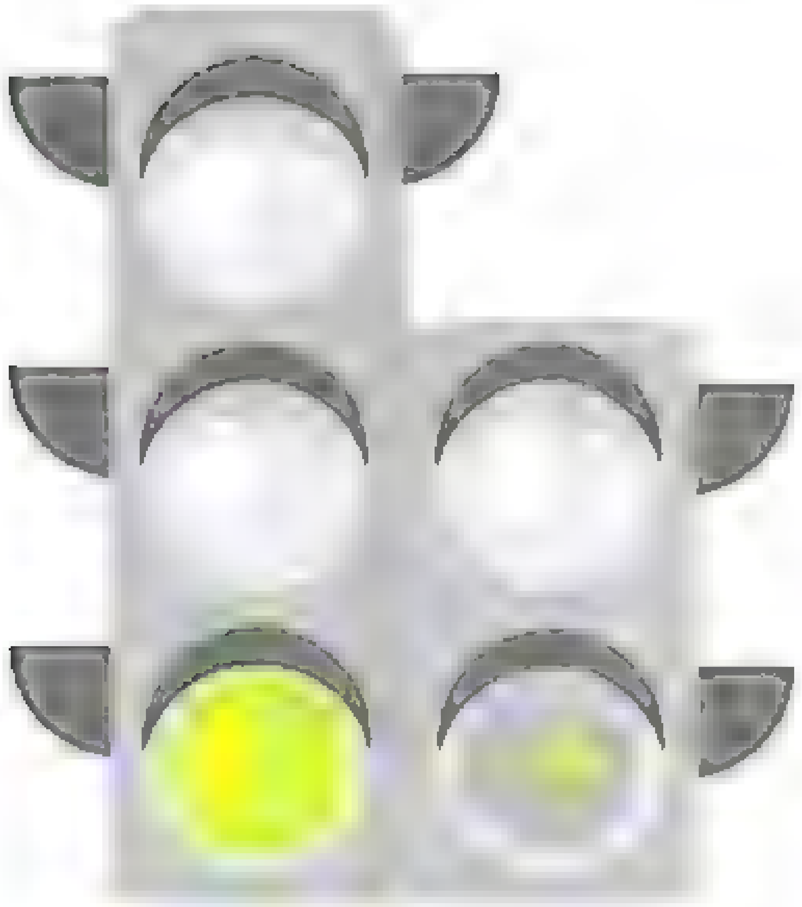
6



You can't swim here.

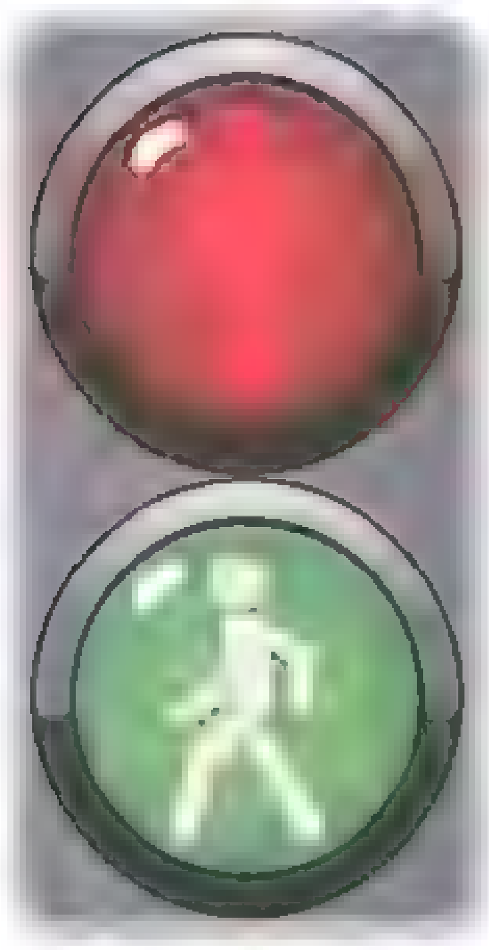
لا يمكنك السباحة هنا.

7



You can go straight and turn right.
يمكنك الذهاب مباشرة وتنعطف يمينًا.

8



Stop here and wait for a green light.
توقف هنا وانتظر الضوء الأخضر.

9



You can't ride your bike here.
لا يمكنك ركوب دراجتك هنا.

10



You can't park here.
لا يمكنك الوقوف هنا.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 You need a (belt – seat – helmet – road) on your bike.

2 You need a seat belt on your (train – bus – car – plane).

3 You need a (red – yellow – orange – green) light to cross the road.

4 You can't (drive – turn – ride – sit) your bike here.

5 You can't (cross – park – ride – need) your car here.

B Language Focus

need

We use "need" when something is important or necessary.

نستخدم «يحتاج» عندما يكون هناك شيء مهم أو ضروري.

Subject فاعل + need/s + noun اسم ... .



You need a helmet on your bike.

أنت بحاجة إلى خوذه على دراجتك.

Subject فاعل + need/s to + inf. مصدر الفعل ... .



You need to look left and right.

أنت تحتاج أن تنظر يسارًا ويمينًا.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 You (should – are – need – can) to be careful on the road.

2 You (need – has – doesn't need – should) a helmet on your bike.

3 You need to (look – looks – looking – looked) left and right.

4 You (need – doesn't need – can't need – needs) a seat belt in your car.

5 We (needs to – needs – need – need to) safe roads.

6 You need to (waits – waiting – wait – waited) for the green light.

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 It's important to be .... on the road.
(a. sad – b. tired – c. safe – d. angry)

2 You .... a helmet on your bike.
(a. needs – b. don't need – c. need – d. doesn't need)

3 You need a seat belt in your ....
(a. car – b. plane – c. train – d. ship)

4 You need a green light to .... the road.
(a. wait – b. go – c. park – d. cross)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5

1 Naglaa only crosses the road when the light is ....

a) red　b) green　c) yellow　d) blue

2 My dad needs a .... in his car.

a) helmet　b) camel　c) seat belt　d) sign

3 Stop here and .... for a green light to be safe on the road.

a) turn　b) swim　c) draw　d) wait

4 You .... swim here. It's very dangerous.

a) can　b) need　c) needs　d) can't

5 You can't .... your bike here.

a) drive　b) ride　c) do　d) swim

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

light – left – right – bike – road

I read about road safety. It's important to be safe on the ....(1).......... . You need the green ....(2).......... to cross the road. You need to look right and ....(3).......... before you cross the road. You need a helmet on your ....(4).......... . You need a seat belt in your car.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

..../5

1 You need (at) .... look left and right.

2 You need a green light to (crossing) .... the road.

3 Ali (need) .... a helmet on his bike.

4 You need to (going) .... straight.

5 Lara needs to (is) .... more careful on the road.

5 Punctuate the following:

..../2

1 you can t swim here.

....

2 stop here and wait for a green light

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

..../5

"Road safety"

be safe – green light – look left and right

....

....

....

....

....

....

Study Lesson 3

A Be careful on the roads!

كن حذرًا على الطريق!

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

road	طريق	safety	أمان
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	crosswalk	ممر مشاة
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	hospital	مستشفى

Extra vocabulary

middle	منتصف	fast (adj.)	سريع	scared (adj.)	خائف
shocked (adj.)	مصدوم	boring (adj.)	ممل	road signs	إشارات الطريق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
love	يحب	loved	cross	يعبر	crossed
call	يستدعى/يتصل بـ ...	called	follow	يتبع	followed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove	fall	يسقط	fell
hurt	يجرح	hurt	understand	يفهم	understood

Expressions and Phrases

be careful on the road	انتبه على الطريق	a young man	شاب صغير السن
in a hurry	على عجلة من أمره	drive through	يقود عبر
fall over	يسقط	call for	يستدعى / يطلب
do right	يفعل الصواب	listen for cars	يستمع لأصوات السيارات



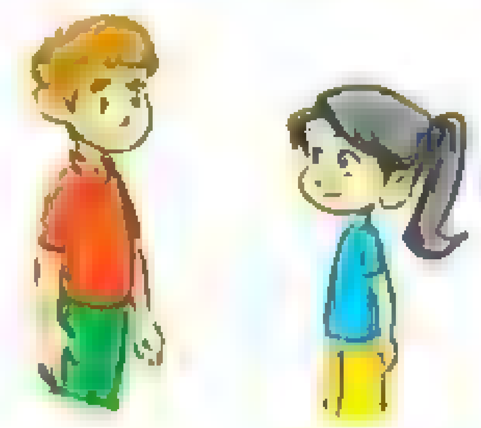
Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (ed) ينطقان /t/ (ت) كما فى (shocked).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) فى كلمة (sign) "silent" لا ينطق.

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister.
They love their school. Their teachers are very kind (1).
Hani is a young (2) man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike.
Today, he was in a hurry.

(1) طيب

(2) صغير في السن

مازن و داليدا أخوان. إنهما يحبان مدرستهما. معلموهما طيبون للغاية. هانى شاب صغير . يعمل فى المدينة ويذهب إلى عمله بالدراجة البخارية. اليوم كان على عجلة من أمره.

The middle



Mazen and Dalida walk to school together.
They cross the road at the crosswalk. Today, they walked to the crosswalk and waited (3) for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road.
Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk.
Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast.
Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

(3) انتظر

يذهب مازن و داليدا إلى المدرسة معًا سيرًا على الأقدام. إنهما يعبران الطريق عبر معبر المشاة. اليوم، ذهبا إلى معبر المشاة وانتظرا حتى تتوقف السيارات، ثم مشيا على الطريق. مشى مازن إلى منتصف معبر المشاة، ثم قاد هانى دراجته البخارية خلال معبر المشاة. لم يتوقف لأنه كان يقود مسرعًا للغاية. وقع مازن. كان مصدومًا للغبة. كانت داليدا خائفة، ولكنها أرادت أن تساعد أخاها.

The end

Hani stopped to help. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg. Hani called for an ambulance.
Mazen is now at the hospital with his mom and sister. Hani is feeling very bad.

توقف هانى لتقدم المساعدة. أراد مازن أن يذهب للمدرسة. ولكن رجله كانت مصابة. طلب هانى الإسعاف. مازن حاليًا فى المستشفى مع والدته وأخته. هانى يشعر بالسوء.

Check point

1 How does Hani go to work? ....

2 Where are Mazen and Dalida going? ....

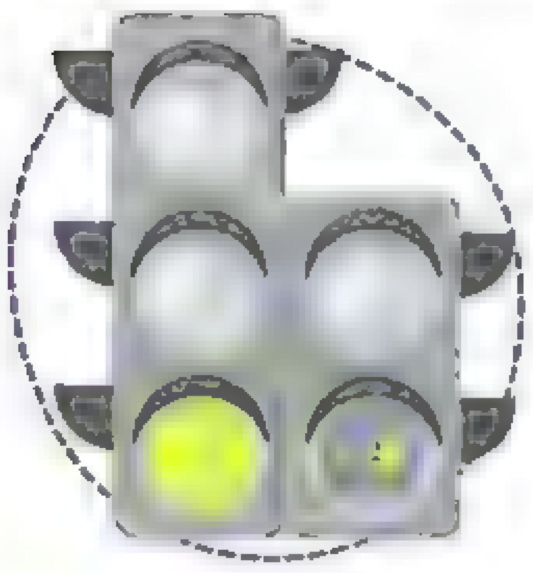
B Language Focus

must

We use "must" or "mustn't" for strong advice.

نستخدم «must» أو «mustn't» لإعطاء نصيحة قوية.

Subject فاعل + must / mustn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....



You must wait for the green lights before you cross the road.

يجب عليك انتظار الضوء الأخضر قبل أن تعبر الطريق.



You mustn't run on roads.

لا يجب أن تجرى على الطريق.

Note When we take notes, we don't write the complete sentences. We write important words.

عندما نقوم بتدوين الملاحظات، لا نكتب جملًا كاملة. نكتب كلمات مهمة.

e.g. Note: must listen for cars

Sentence: You must listen for cars.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 You (must – shouldn't – mustn't – can't) wear a seat belt in a car.
2 You (mustn't – can't – must – shouldn't) be careful while crossing the road.
3 You must (follows – followed – following – follow) road signs.
4 You must (cross – crosses – crossed – crossing) the road at the crosswalk.
5 You (can't – shouldn't – mustn't – must) wait for the cars to stop before crossing the road.
6 You (must – should – mustn't – need) play on the road.

Pronunciation

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

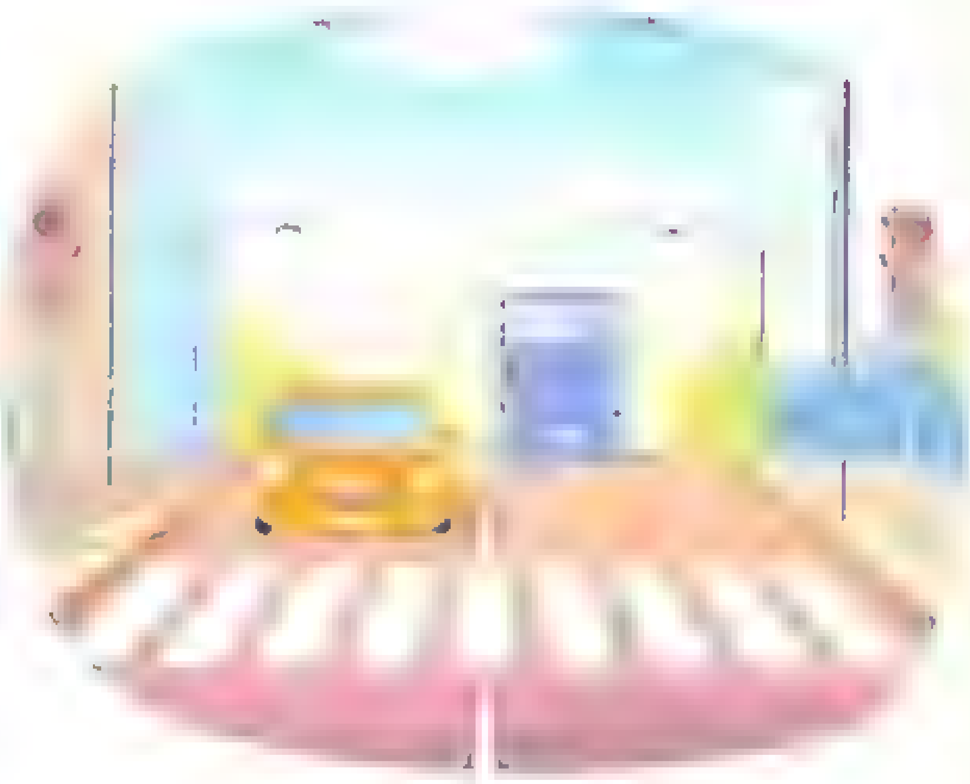
cr /kr/



crowd
زحمة



crash
يصطدم

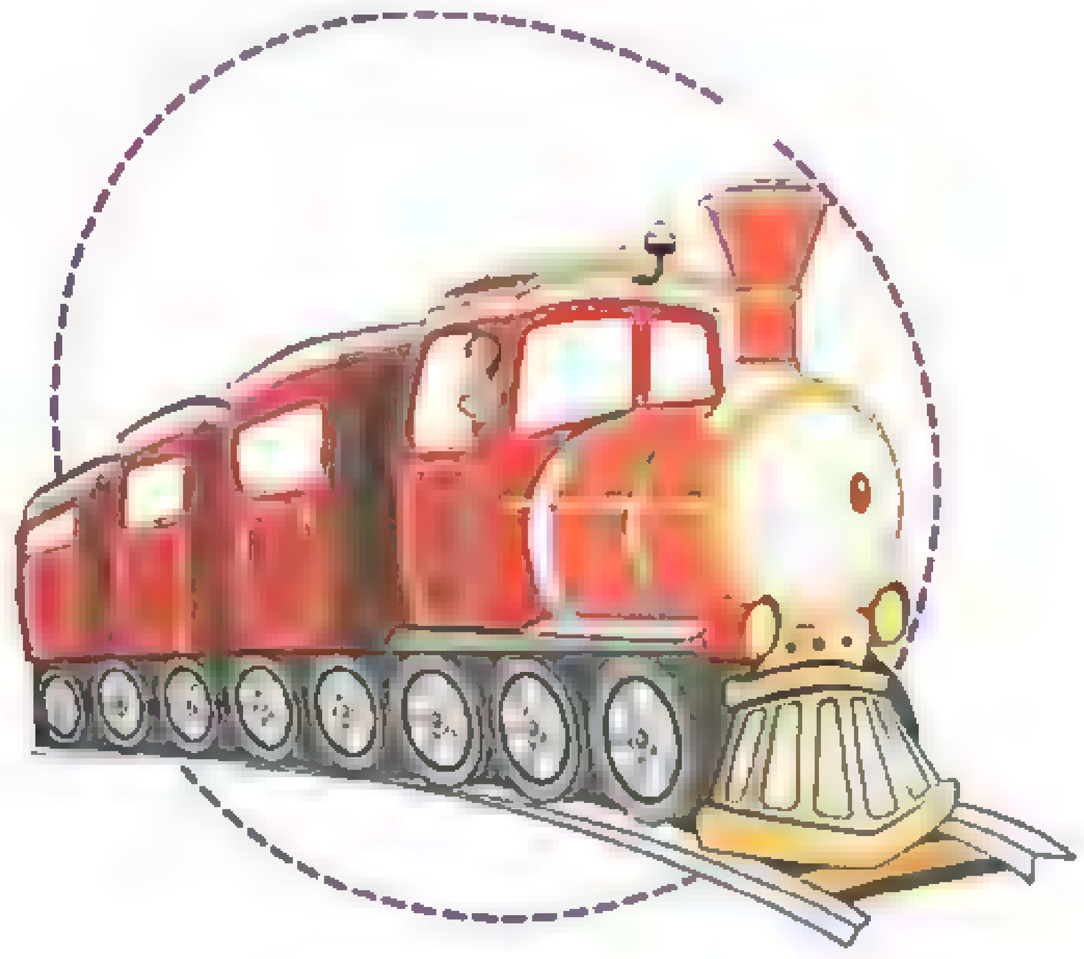


crosswalk
معبر المشاة

tr /tr/



truck
شاحنة



train
قطار

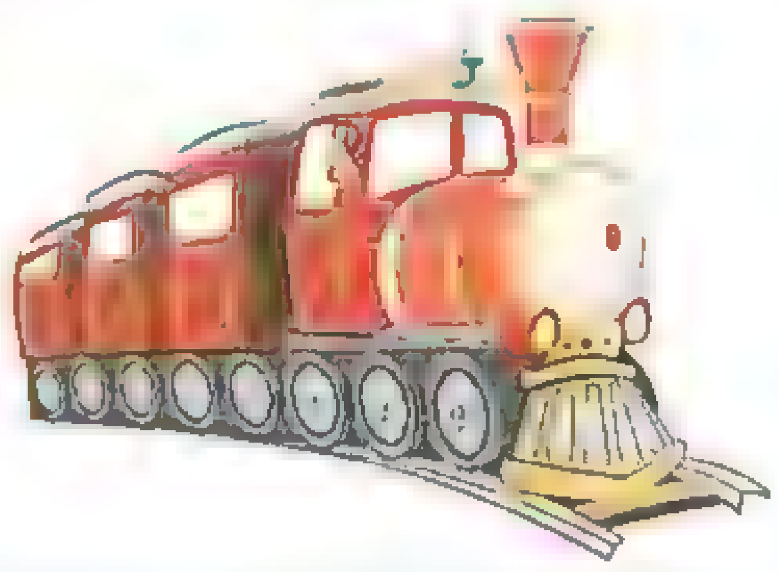
Diphthongs (long vowels):

الأصوات المركبة (حروف العلة الطويلة):

A diphthong is a vowel sound made by pronouncing two vowels quickly one after the other.

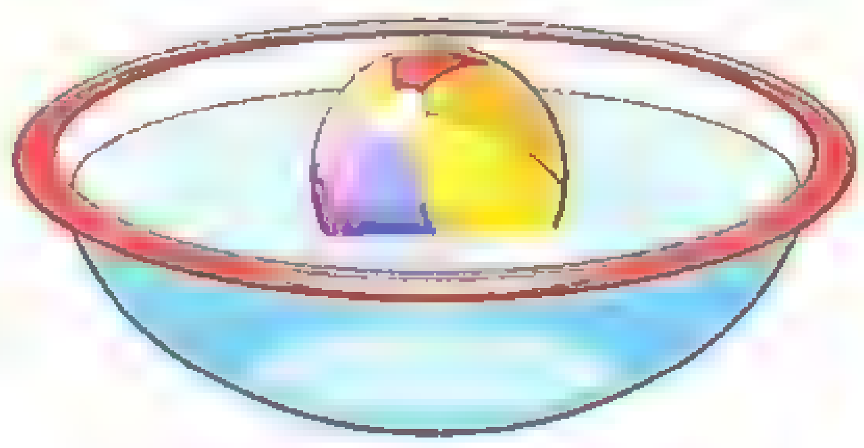
الصوت المركب هو صوت متحرك يتم إجراؤه عن طريق نطق حرفين متحركين بسرعة واحدًا تلو الأخرى.





ai /eɪ/	rain مطر	snail حلزون	train قطار





oa /oʊ/	boat مركب	coat معطف	float تطفو





ea /i:/	clean ينظف/ نظيف	dream حلم	sea بحر

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 Mazen and Dalida are brother and ....

(a. dad – b. mom – c. uncle – d. sister)

2 Their teachers are very ....

(a. tired – b. sad – c. kind – d. angry)

3 They wait for the cars to ....

(a. run – b. stop – c. walk – d. arrive)

4 They never cross the .... until the light is green.

(a. river – b. sea – c. road – d. farm)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 When someone is hurt, we call for the ....

a) car b) taxi c) bus d) ambulance

2 Hani was in a .... because he was late for work.

a) road b) hurry c) crosswalk d) shock

3 You must cross the road at the ....

a) right b) left c) crosswalk d) straight

4 He didn't stop because he was going too ....

a) slow b) happy c) fast d) sad

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

ambulance – fast – hurry – lights – crosswalk

Hani is a young man who works in the city. One day, Hani was late for work so he was in a ....(1)............ . He drove his motorbike ....(2)............ . Mazen and his sister Dalida were walking on the ....(3)............ . Hani couldn't stop. Mazen fell over and Hani called for an ....(4)............ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Ali and Rana are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind and helpful. Osama is a young man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike. Today, he was in a hurry. Ali and Rana walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. They walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road. Ali walked to the middle of the crosswalk.

Then Osama drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. Ali fell over. He was very shocked. Rana was scared. Osama stopped to help. Ali wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg. Osama called for an ambulance.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Osama goes to his work by a ....

a) car b) taxi c) motorbike d) bus

2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) Ali b) Osama c) Rana d) Ali and Rana

Answer the following questions:

3 Why do Ali and Rana love their school?

....

4 How did Osama help Ali?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 You (must) .... walk in the middle of the road.

2 You must (wears) .... a helmet when you ride your bike.

3 You must (crossing) .... the road at the crosswalk.

4 You (mustn't) .... wait for the green lights before you cross the road.

6 Punctuate the following: (2)

1 hani mustn't drive fast

....

2 today, dad was in a hurry

....

Study Lesson 4

Air pollution

تلوث الهواء

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

pollution	تلوث	chemicals	مواد كيمائية	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
electric buses	أتوبيسات تعمل بالكهرباء	straw	قش	photosynthesis	عملية التمثيل الضوئي

Extra vocabulary

dirty (adj.)	متسخ	London	لندن	England	إنجلترا
Shenzhen	تشنجن (مدينة بالصين)	China	الصين	burning	حرق
Paris	باريس	Copenhagen	كوبنهاجن	Denmark	الدانمارك
worried (adj.)	قلق	son	ابن	asthma	مرض الربو
heating	جهاز التدفئة	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز
growth	نمو	parents	الوالدان	shade	ظل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	cycle	يركب الدراجة	cycled
stop	يتوقف	stopped	allow	يسمح	allowed
cover	يغطي	covered			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع	made	put	يضع	put

Expressions and Phrases

take a bus	يستقل الأتوبيس	First of all, ...	أولًا
cut the amount	يخفض الاستهلاك	a long way from	على مسافة بعيدة من
open fires	مدفأة مكشوفة	That's helpful!	هذا مفيد!

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ch) في كلمة (chemicals) ينطقان /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (zh) في كلمة (Shenzhen) ينطقان /dʒ/ (دج).
- لاحظ أن حروف الـ (sth) في كلمة (asthma) تُنطق /z/ (ز).

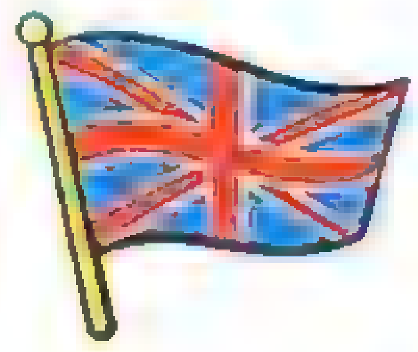
Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



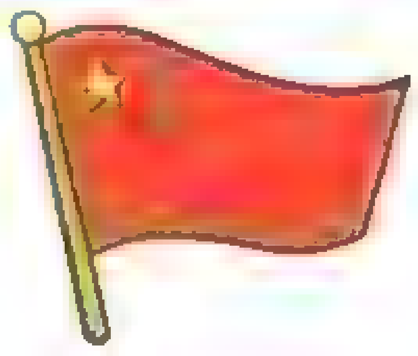
Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous.
Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.
Does this happen to you in your city or town? Is the air dirty or clean?

المدن بها الكثير من السيارات. السيارات تسبب تلوث الهواء. يضعون المواد الكميائية فى الهواء. لا يمكننا دائمًا رؤية المواد الكيميائية، لكنها خطيرة.
يشكل تلوث الهواء خطورة علينا. عندما نتنفس الهواء الملوث، نسعل ونشعر بالمرض. هل هذا يحدث لك فى مدينتك أو بلدتك؟ هل الهواء متسخ أم نظيف؟



Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school.

تحاول بعض المدن وقف تلوث الهواء. فى لندن، إنجلترا، الآباء لا يقودون أطفالهم إلى المدرسة. يمشى الأطفال أو يذهبون إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. السيارات لا تقترب من المدرسة.



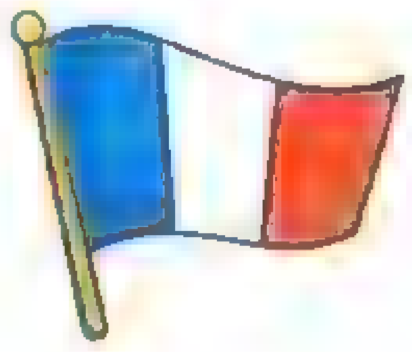
In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

فى تنشجن، الصين، لديهم أتوبيسات كهربائية. هذه الأتوبيسات لا تسبب تلوث الهواء.



In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air.
To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

فى الغربية، مصر، أراد المزارعون الحصول على هواء أنظف. للقيام بذلك، توقفوا عن حرق قش الأرز. استخدموا القش لصنع طعام لحيواناتهم وتغطية محاصيلهم.



In Paris, France, cars can't go into some parts of the city.
In these places, you can only walk or take a bus.

فى باريس، فرنسا، لا يمكن للسيارات الذهاب إلى بعض أجزاء من المدينة. فى هذه الأماكن ، يمكنك المشى أو ركوب الأتوبيس فقط.



In Copenhagen, Denmark, there are more bikes than people and large parts of the city don't allow cars.

فى كوبنهاجن، الدانمارك، عدد الدراجات أكبر من عدد الناس ، وأجزاء كبيرة من المدينة لا تسمح بالسيارات.

These are all good ideas to stop air pollution in cities.
Which idea do you like best?

هذه كلها أفكار جيدة لوقف تلوث الهواء فى المدن. أى فكرة تفضلها أكثر؟

Check point

1 What do cars make? ....

2 How did people in London stop air pollution? ....

Listening script

Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Interviewer

Today I am talking to Doctor Helen Walker about air pollution. Helen, why are you worried about this subject?

أتحدث اليوم مع الدكتورة هيلين واكر عن تلوث الهواء. هيلين ، لماذا أنتِ قلقة من هذا الموضوع؟





Helen

Because one of my sons has very bad asthma and I think it is because of the dirty air in our city. I wanted to say something to help him and other children.

لأن أحد أبنائى يعانى من الربو الشديد وأعتقد أنه بسبب الهواء القذر فى مدينتنا. أردت أن أقول شيئًا ما أساعده وأساعد الأطفال الآخرين.



Interviewer

What can we do to help make the air cleaner?

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل للمساعدة فى جعل الهواء أنظف؟





Helen

I have some ideas. First of all, we need to cut the amount we use our cars. We can try to buy from stores near our house. Children can try to walk to school.

لدى بعض الأفكار. أولًا، نحتاج إلى خفض مقدار استخدامنا لسياراتنا. يمكننا محاولة الشراء من المتاجر القريبة من منزلنا. يمكن للأطفال محاولة المشى إلى المدرسة.



Interviewer

But sometimes children live a long way from school.

لكن فى بعض الأحيان يعيش الأطفال على بعد مسافة طويلة من المدرسة.



Helen

Then they could go by bike or maybe take the bus.

إذًا يمكنهم الذهاب بالدراجة أو ركوب الحافلة.



Interviewer

Good idea, many schools have buses. What are your other ideas?

فكرة جيدة ، العديد من المدارس لديها أتوبيسات. ما هى أفكارك الأخرى؟





Helen

Try not to have open fires at home. If it's cold, use the heating. And use renewable energy if you can, like solar power – renewable energy keeps the air clean!

حاول ألا يكون لديك مدفأة مكشوفة فى المنزل. إذا كان الجو باردًا، استخدم جهاز التدفئة. واستخدم الطاقة المتجددة إذا استطعت، مثل الطاقة الشمسية - الطاقة المتجددة تحافظ على نظافة الهواء!



Interviewer

Oh, that's helpful. What about more trees?

أوه ، هذا مفيد. ماذا عن المزيد من الأشجار؟





Helen

Yes, that's an excellent idea. We need to plant trees. Trees clean the air because they use the chemicals for their growth through photosynthesis. They also make cities look pretty and give us shade on a hot day!

نعم ، هذه فكرة ممتازة. نحن بحاجة لزراعة الأشجار. تقوم الأشجار بتنظيف الهواء لأنها تستخدم المواد الكيميائية لنموها من خلال عملية التمثيل الضوئى. كما أنها تجعل المدن تبدو جميلة وتمنحنا الظل فى يوم حار!

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 Cities have .... cars.
(a. few – b. little – c. many – d. much)
2 We .... always see the chemicals.
(a. must – b. can – c. mustn't – d. can't)
3 Air pollution is .... for us.
(a. good – b. helpful – c. safe – d. dangerous)
4 When we breathe the polluted air, we feel ....
(a. happy – b. better – c. sick – d. excited)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 5

1 Cars put .... in the air and cause air pollution.
a) chemicals b) water c) solar power d) bikes
2 In Gharbia, farmers used the straw to .... their animals.
a) cover b) cut c) allow d) make
3 We need to use more renewable energy like .... power.
a) gas b) electric c) solar d) chemicals
4 .... cars are excellent because they work with electricity.
a) Gas b) Solar c) Electric d) Fire
5 Ali has .... because of the dirty air.
a) straw b) asthma c) shade d) heating

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

car – renewable – bike – polluted – pollution

Air pollution is dangerous. When we breathe ....(1)........... air, we cough and feel sick. Here are some ideas that can help us stop air ....(2)........... . You can go to school by ....(3)........... or the bus. We can plant more trees and use ....(4)........... energy like solar power.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick. Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive their children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school. In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air. To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 In .... parents do not drive their children to school.

a) Cairo b) London c) Shenzhen d) Paris

2 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) chemicals b) children c) schools d) cars

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did farmers in Gharbia want to have?

....

4 How do the children in England go to school?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

is the air clean in Egypt

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

SB

"Air pollution"

- Is the air dirty or clean in your city?
- Do cars cause air pollution?
- How can we stop it?

....

....

....

....

Study

Lessons 5 & 6

Writing & Project

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

energy-saving (adj.)	موفرة للكهرباء	lightbulbs	مصابيح	gas	بنزين
cycle lanes	ممرات للدراجات	traffic	حركة المرور	road signs	إشارات الطريق

Extra vocabulary

report	تقرير	excited (adj.)	متشوق	ideas	أفكار
apartment	شقة	balcony	بلكونة	nearer (adj.)	أقرب
cleaner (adj.)	أنقى	building materials	مواد البناء	main heading	عنوان رئيسي
sub-heading	عنوان فرعي	carbon monoxide	أول أكسيد الكربون	breathing problems	مشاكل التنفس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
decide	يقرر	decided	increase	يزيد	increased
pollute	يلوث	polluted	reduce	يقلل	reduced
share	يتشارك	shared			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove	burn	يحرق	burnt

Expressions and Phrases

do research	يقوم ببحث	put in	يركّب شيئًا
car-free roads	طرق خالية من العربيات	from behind	من الخلف

A Writing

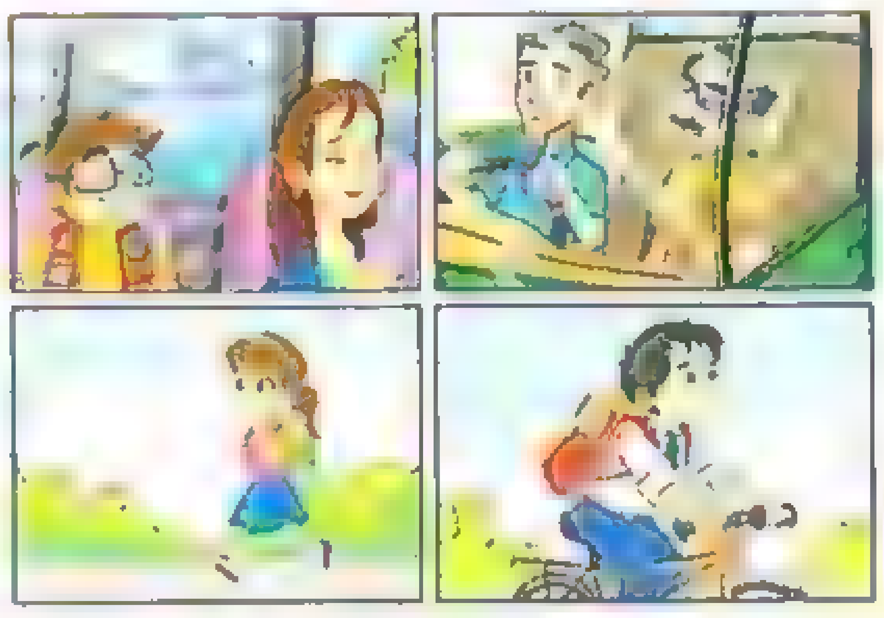
Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Introduction

Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do.

استمعت الأسبوع الماضى إلى الدكتورة هيلين والكر تتحدث عن تلوث الهواء. لقد أحببت أفكارها وقمت ببعض الأبحاث. لقد تحدثت مع عائلتى حول ما يمكننا القيام به.



What we can do

- We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment. • يمكننا الحصول على مصابيح موفرة للطاقة فى شقتنا.
- We can use buses and trains more. • يمكننا استخدام الأتوبيسات والقطارات أكثر.
- We can share a car with a friend sometimes. • يمكننا مشاركة السيارة مع صديق فى بعض الأحيان.
- We can walk and not always go by car. • يمكننا المشى ولا نذهب بالسيارة دائمًا.
- We can have many plants on our balcony. • يمكن أن يكون لدينا العديد من النباتات فى شرفتنا.

What we decided to do

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to school.
We have more plants in the living room and on the balcony. When our lightbulbs stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm excited!
Youssef

قررنا تغيير بعض الأشياء كعائلة. يذهب أبى الآن للعمل مع صديقه فى نفس السيارة. أمى تستقل الأتوبيس إلى العمل. هى لا تقود. أنا أذهب الآن إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. أختى نورا تمشى إلى المدرسة.
لدينا المزيد من النباتات فى غرفة المعيشة وفى الشرفة. عندما تتوقف مصابيحنا الكهربائية عن العمل، يمكننا وضع مصابيح موفرة للطاقة. أنا متحمس! يوسف.

Check point

1 How does Mom go to work? ....

2 Why does Noura walk to school? ....

More ideas to stop air pollution

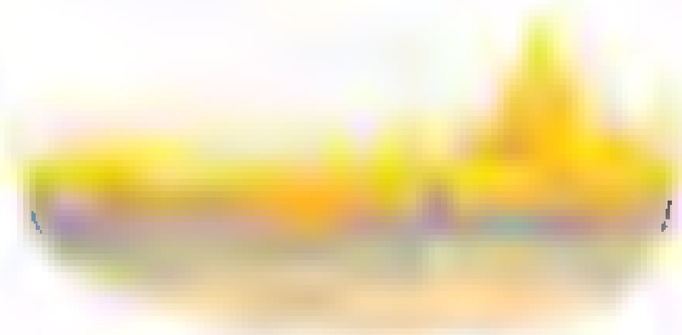
المزيد من الأفكار لوقف تلوث الهواء

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Don't burn rice straw.

لا تحرق قش الأرز.



Increase public transportation.

زد من وسائل النقل العام.



Have cleaner gas in your car.

احصل على غاز أنظف فى سارتك.



Use building materials that don't pollute.

استخدم مواد بناء غير ملوثه.



Have some car-free roads.

احصل على بعض الطرق الخالية من السيارات.



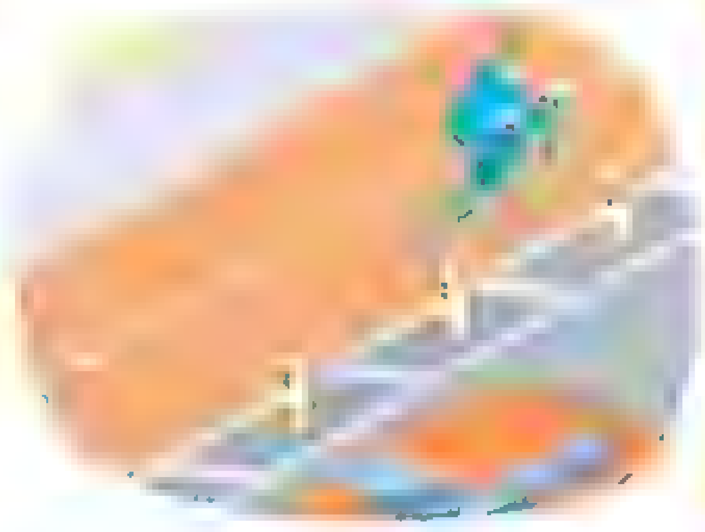
Travel on foot or by bike.

انتقل سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجه.



Have cycle lanes at the side of roads.

احصل على ممرات للدراجات على جانب الطريق.



B Project

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Road safety leaflet
نشرة السلامة على الطرق

ROAD SAFETY

photo

main heading



sub-heading

Be safe on the road كن أمنًا على الطريق

Use the crosswalks. استخدِم ممرات المشاة.

Walk slowly – don't run. امشِ ببطء - لا تجرِ.



Watch the traffic – listen for cars
انتبه لحركة المرور - استمع لأصوات السيارات

Don't cross from behind a car. لا تعبر من خلف السيارة.



Read the road signs اقرأ علامات الطريق

Read the road signs. They give you important information about the road.
اقرأ علامات الطريق. تعطيك العلامات معلومات مهمة عن الطريق.

paragraph

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same ....
(a. metro – b. bus – c. car – d. train)

2 Mom .... the bus to work.
(a. takes – b. gives – c. drives – d. rides)

3 I .... to school.
(a. walk – b. run – c. drive – d. cycle)

4 Noura's school is ....
(a. small – b. near – c. far – d. big)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 We can have many .... on our balcony.

a) cars b) trains c) plants d) planes

2 We have energy- saving .... in our apartment.

a) cars b) lightbulbs c) plants d) ovens

3 We can .... a car with a friend sometimes.

a) buy b) burn c) share d) walk

4 Don't .... rice straw to stop air pollution.

a) use b) eat c) burn d) increase

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

share – dangerous – walk – energy-saving – trains

Last week, my teacher was talking about air pollution. She gave us some ideas to stop air pollution. We can have ....(1)............ lightbulbs in our apartments. We can use more buses and ....(2)............ . We can also ....(3)............ a car with a friend sometimes. If you're going to a near place, you can ....(4)............ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

I'm Ola. I read about air pollution. It's very dangerous. We can stop air pollution. My family decided to change some things. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I cycle to school. My brother Ahmed walks to school because his school is nearer. I find many things we can do to stop air pollution. We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment. We can have many plants on our balcony.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) cars b) Ola's school c) ideas to stop air pollution d) Ola's brother

2 Ola's family decided to .... some things to stop air pollution.

a) increase b) change c) drive d) burn

B Answer the following questions:

3 How does Ola go to school?

....

4 Why does Ahmed walk to school?

....

5 Punctuate the following: (1)

Don t burn rice straw

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Ideas to stop air pollution"

- What can we do to stop air pollution?
- What should we put on our balconies?
- Should we increase public transportation?

....

....

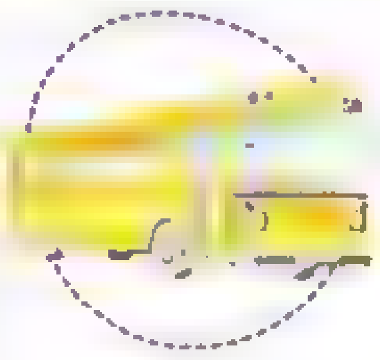
....

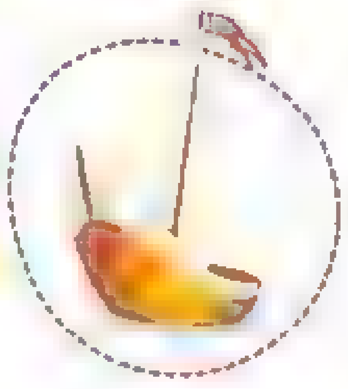
....

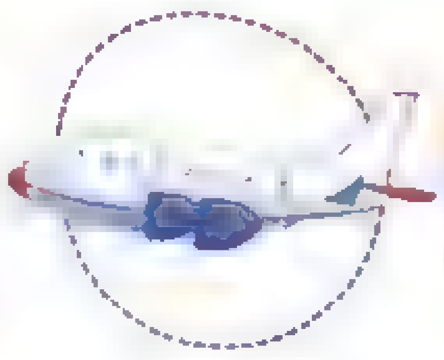
Unit 11 REVIEW



Vocabulary

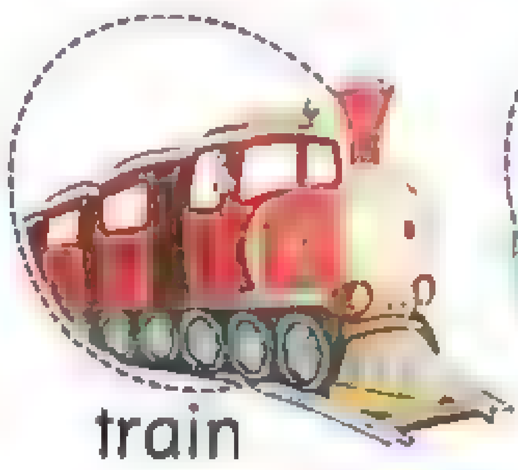

bus

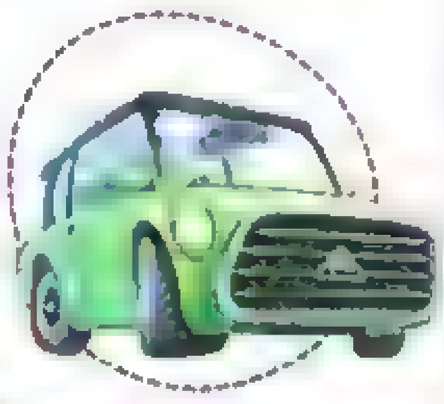

boat

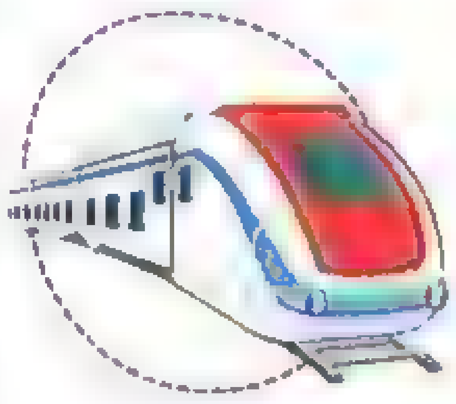

plane

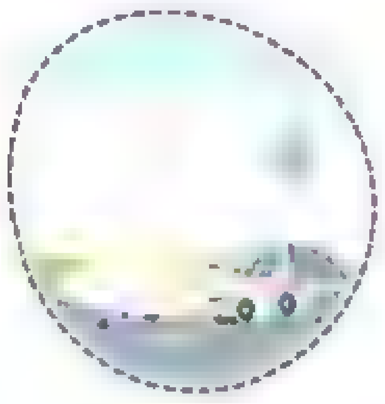

taxi


ship


train

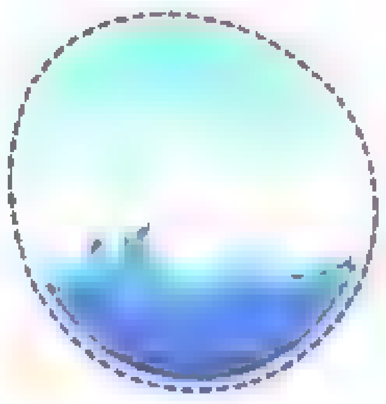

car

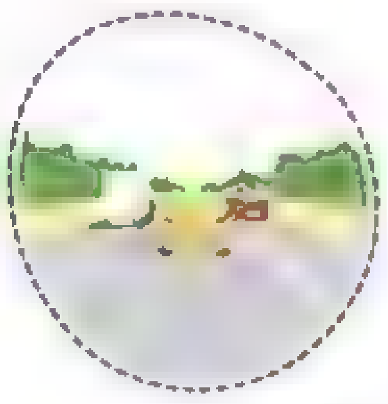

metro


airport


rail


air


water


road

Language Focus

on: foot, water

e.g. 
I go to school **on** foot.

by: car, bus, train, ship, boat, plane

e.g. 
We travel to Aswan **by** train.

need

Subject فاعل + **need/s** + (noun) اسم ... .

e.g. 
You **need** a helmet on your bike.

Subject فاعل + **need/s to** + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .

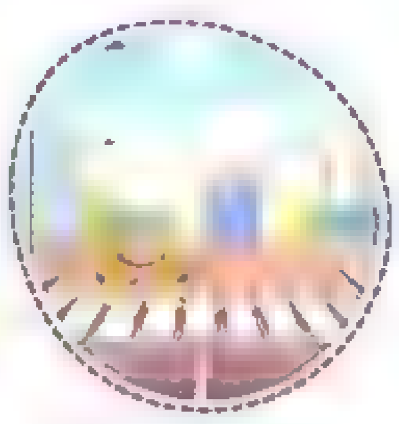
e.g. 
You **need to look** left and right.

Pronunciation

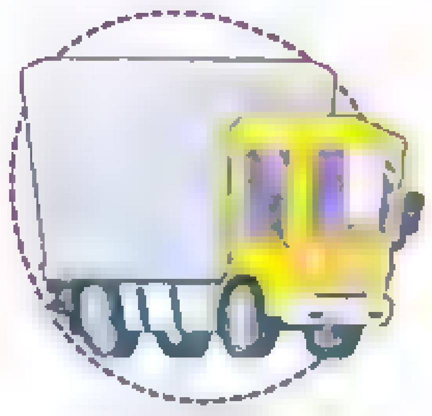
cr /kr/

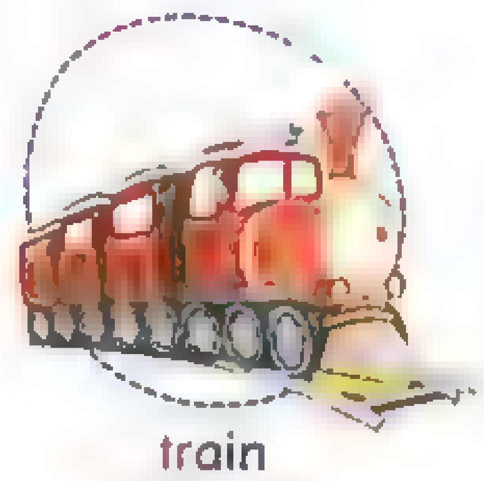

crowd
زحمة


crash
يصطدم


crosswalk
معبر المشاة

tr /tr/


truck
شاحنة


train
قطار

Unit 11 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

قارب	....	سفينة	....
مترو الأنفاق	....	طائرة	....
مطار	....	سيارة	....
سكة حديد	....	مياه	....
الهواء/الجو	....	الطريق	....

Lesson 2

حزام الأمان	....	آمن	....
خوذة	....	ضوء	....
يسار	....	يمين	....
جمل	....	مستقيم	....
بأمان	....	ينتظر	....

Lesson 3

دراجة بخارية	....	ممر المشاة	....
سيارة إسعاف	....	فى عجلة من أمره	....
مصدوم	....	خائف	....
نظيف	....	شاب صغير السن	....
يصطدم	....	زحمة	....
شاحنة	....	يطفو	....

Lesson 4

مواد كيميائية	....	تلوث	....
خطير	....	أتوبيسات تعمل بالكهرباء	....
ظل	....	الطاقة الشمسية	....
مرض الربو	....	فكرة	....
متجر	....	تدفئة	....
الطاقة المتجددة	....	التمثيل الضوئى	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME

How to write about transportation:

1. There are many forms of transportation in my town/city.
2. There are + اسم المواصلات that go on + طريقة الانتقال.
3. When we go by + وسيلة المواصلات, we are on + طريقة الانتقال.

There are many forms of transportation types in my city. There are cars and buses that move on roads. When we go by trains or metros, we are on rails. When we go by planes, we go through the air. When we go by boat or ships, we are on water.

How to write about being safe on the road:

1. It's important to be safe on the road.
2. You need + أدوات أمان + in/on + your bike/car.
3. You need + إرشادات عبور الطريق.

It's important to be safe on the road. You need a helmet on your bike. You need a green light to cross the road. You need a seat belt in your car. You need to look right and left before you cross the road. Use the crosswalk and don't cross from behind a car.

How to write ideas to stop air pollution:

1. There are + عوامل تلوث الهواء + and cause air pollution.
2. Air pollution is dangerous because + مخاطر تلوث الهواء.
3. We can + طرق تقليل تلوث الهواء.

There are many cars that put chemicals in the air and cause air pollution. Air pollution is dangerous because when we breathe polluted air, we cough and feel sick. We can share a car with another person. We can walk or cycle to school. We can put more plants on our balconies too.

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box:

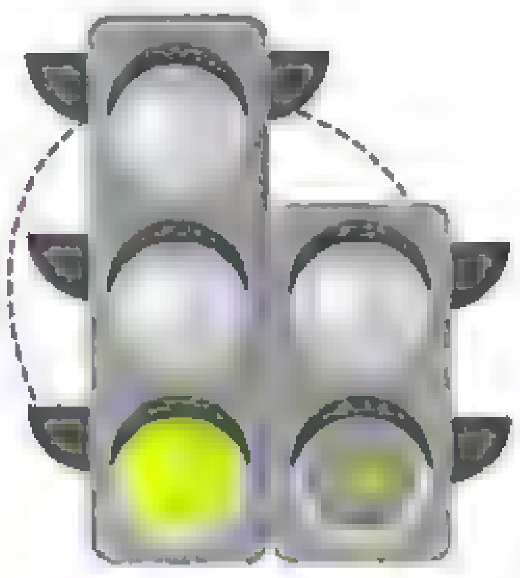
taxi – plane – train – boat – car – ship – bus

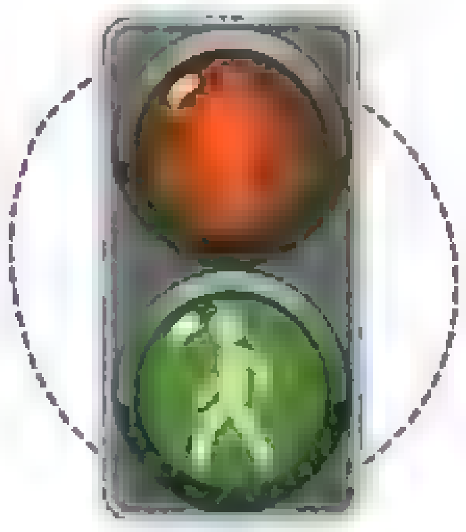
1 When I travel by ...., I go through the air.
2 When I travel by .... and ...., I am on the water.
3 When I travel by .... and ...., I am on the road.
4 I travel by .... around the city.
5 When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by ...., I move on a rail under the vehicle.

2 Look at the signs and complete:

1 
There are sometimes .... on the road.

2 
You can't .... here.

3 
You can go straight and .... right.

4 
...... here and wait for a green light.

3 Use the notes to make sentences:

1	must listen for cars	We must listen for cars before we cross the road.
2	cross crosswalk	....
3	don't run – roads	....
4	wear seat belt in car	....
5	wear helmet on bike	....
6	follow road signs	....

Test Yourself

30

UNIT 11

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 Some cities are trying to .... air pollution.
(a. increase – b. help - c. stop - d. do)

2 In London, England, children .... or cycle to school.
(a. run - b. walk - c. drive - d. jump)

3 In ...., China, they have electric buses that don't pollute the air.
(a. Shenzhen - b. Cairo - c. England - d. Paris)

4 In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers stopped .... rice straw.
(a. eating - b. using - c. burning - d. covering)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 You need to use the crosswalk when you .... the road.

a) drive b) read c) cross d) swim

2 You need to use a .... in your car.

a) helmet b) seat belt c) crosswalk d) traffic

3 You mustn't cross from behind a car. It's not ....

a) slow b) safe c) bad d) dangerous

4 Mazen hurt his leg and his sister called for a/an ....

a) car b) taxi c) ambulance d) bus

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

power – healthy – idea – sick – share

Air pollution is dangerous because when we breathe polluted air, we cough and feel ....(1)............ . We need to stop air pollution. We can drive less or ....(2)............ a car with another person. It's also helpful to use more solar ....(3)............ . Planting more trees is a good ....(4)............ as well.

4 Read the text and then answer the questions:

6

Nancy lives in a big city with her family. There are many cars where she lives. These cars put chemicals in the air and cause air pollution. Nancy thinks it is dangerous because when people breathe polluted air, they cough and feel sick. Nancy shares some ideas with her family to help stop air pollution. She thinks her dad should share a car with a friend to go to work. Her mom can take the bus to work. And her sister Nada should walk to school because her school is near the house.

a Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... pollution.
a) water b) air c) land d) soil

2 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....
a) cars b) chemicals c) people d) ideas

b Answer the following questions:

3 What should Nancy's dad do? ....

4 Why should Nada walk to school? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Ramy travels to Alexandria (on) .... train.

2 Salma needs to (wearing) .... a helmet on her bike.

3 You (must) .... run on the roads.

4 You must (listens) .... for cars.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

people have electric buses in china.

....

7 Write a text of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Transportation in my town"

- How do you go to school?
- What's your favorite transportation?
- Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

....

....

....

Unit 11 Al-Azhar Corner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Hala needs to be (quick – fast – safe) on the road.
2. Hala needs a helmet on her (car – bike – bus).
3. Hala (cycles – run – walk) at the side of the road.

2 Read and complete the dialog:

late – get – catch – foot

Seleem: How do you .... to school?

Ramy : I come to school on ....

Seleem: Do you ever .... the bus or metro?

Ramy : Only if I'm ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Nader was in a (shock – hurry – trip). He ran along the way to work.
2. You (must – mustn't – shouldn't) watch for the traffic lights.
3. I live near the school so I go there (on – by – at) foot.
4. (Stop – Stopped – Stopping) here and wait for the green light.
5. Nahla never travels by (train – bus – ship). She doesn't like traveling on water.

Unit 12

Fiction Reader

Story

Connect Reading Adventures



Story overview

- By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

بنهاية القصة سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- read and understand a story.
- enjoy reading in English.
- identify characters in a story.
- identify key events and vocabulary in a story.

- يقرأ ويفهم قصة.
- يستمتع بالقراءة باللغة الإنجليزية.
- يتعرف على الشخصيات فى القصة.
- يتعرف على الأحداث الهامة والكلمات فى القصة.

Dalia Saves the Village!

Title
العنوان

داليا تنقذ القرية!



Retold by Nicola Gardner

Author
المؤلف

Warm up

Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. She is doing research about crops in Egypt. The crops aren't growing well in the village. There is a problem with the irrigation canal in the village. Dalia wants to help people in the village. She contacts all the people there on social media asking for help. They decide to help her. They manage to solve the problem together so the villagers can grow crops again. Dalia tells the villagers more about her research to grow different crops. She advises them to grow wheat. Everything is better now in the village. Dalia decides to work with agriculture when she grows up.

تعيش داليا فى قرية فى مصر. تقوم داليا بعمل بحث عن المحاصيل التى تنمو فى مصر. لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد فى القرية. توجد مشكلة متعلقة بقناة الرى فى القرية. تريد داليا أن تساعد سكان القرية. تتواصل داليا مع سكان القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى لطلب المساعدة، فيقرر أهل القرية مساعدتها. يستطيع الجميع حل المشكلة معًا فيستطيع أهل القرية زراعة المحاصيل مجددًا. تخبر داليا أهل القرية عن بحثها أكثر ليتمكنوا من زراعة محاصيل مختلفة. وتنصحهم داليا بزراعة القمح. كل شيء فى تحسن الآن فى القرية. تقرر داليا أن تتخصص فى مجال الزراعة عندما تكبر.

Study

Story

Dalia Saves the Village!

A Vocabulary

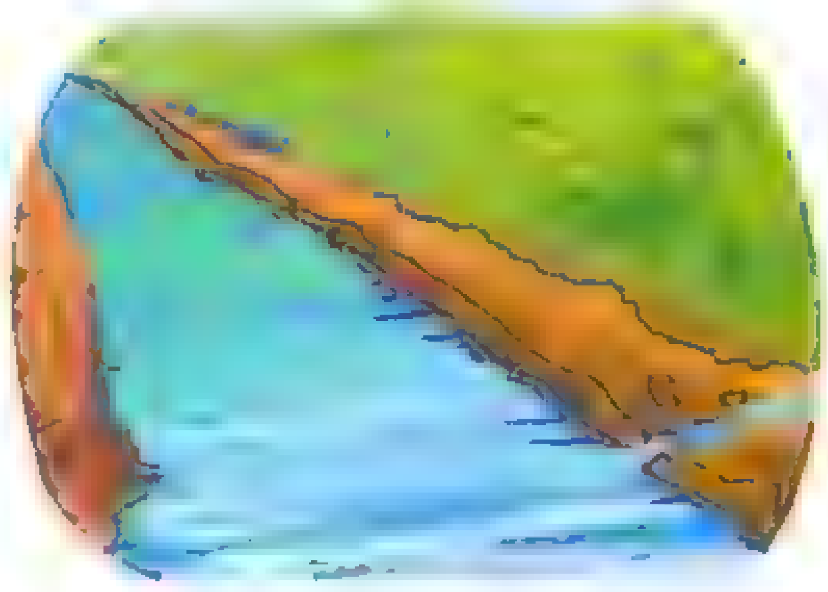
Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



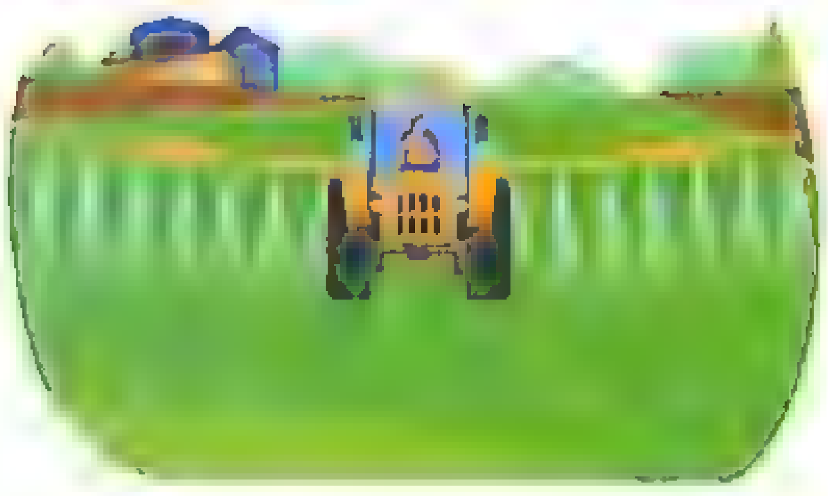
wheat قمح



crop محصول



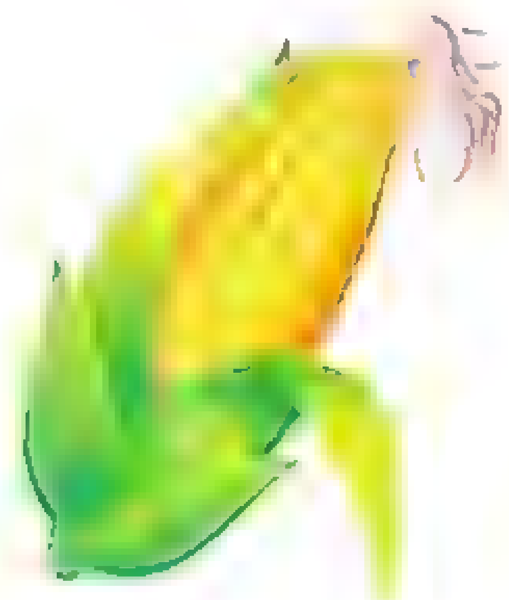
irrigation canal قناة الرى



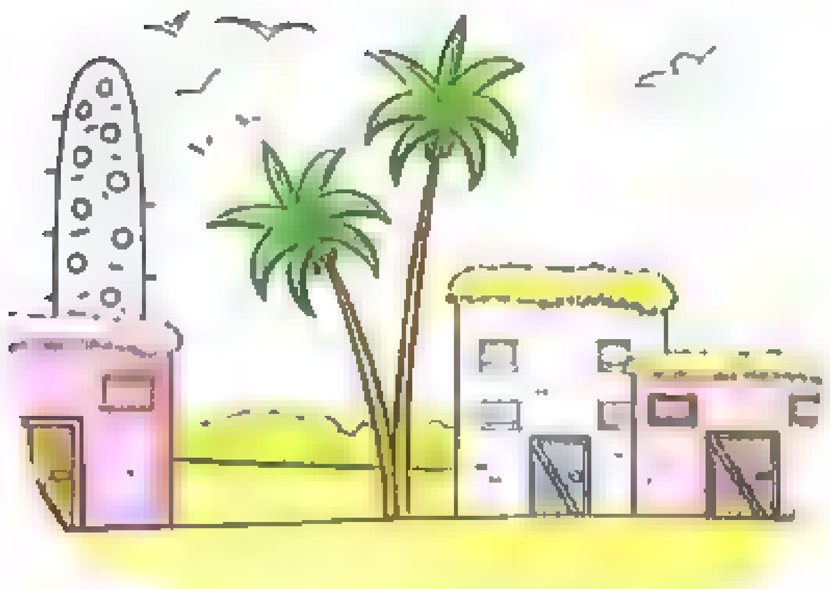
irrigation الرى



wheat flour دقيق قمح



maize ذرة



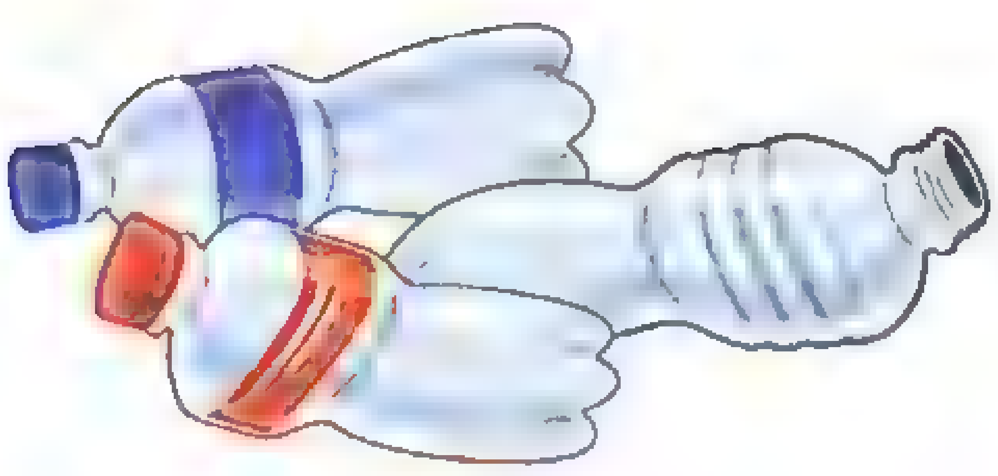
village قرية



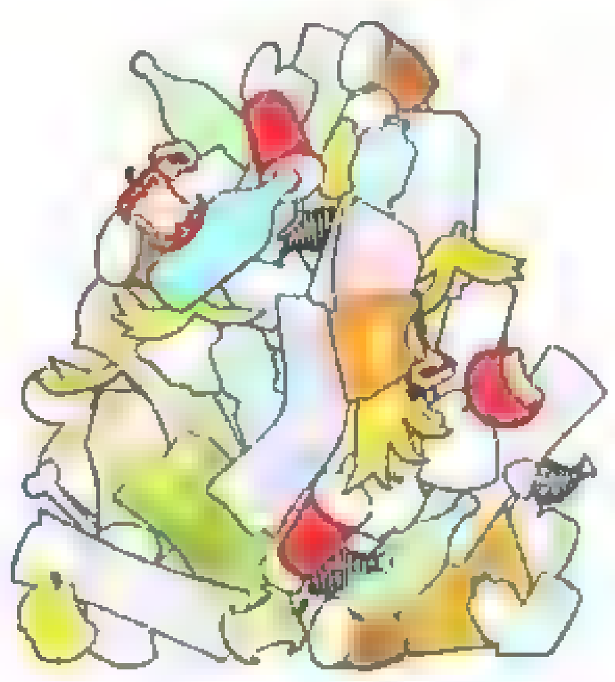
baladi bread خبز بلدى (عيش بلدى)



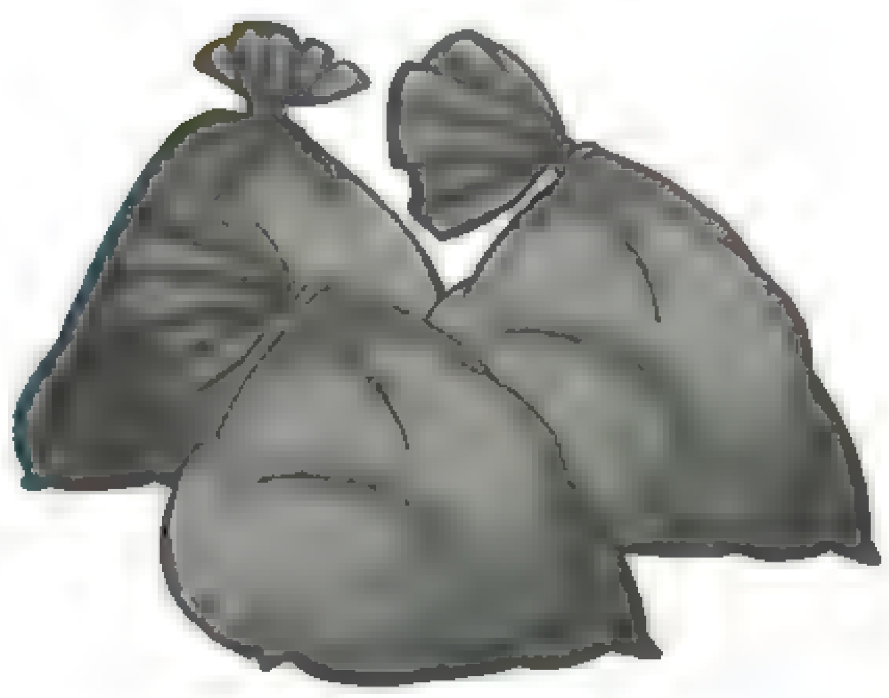
cookies بسكويت (كوكيز)



plastic bottles زجاجات بلاستيكية



trash قمامة



trash bags أكياس القمامة

Extra vocabulary

interesting (adj.)	شيق	important (adj.)	مهم
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ (شهى)	well	بشكل جيد
problem	مشكلة	simple (adj.)	بسيط
call (v.)	ينادى/ يتصل	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
get (v.)	يحصل على	meet (v.)	يقابل
main square	الميدان الرئيسى	bike	دراجة
excited (adj.)	متحمس	grandparents	أجداد
give (v.)	يعطى	see (v.)	يفحص/ يعاين
bring (v.)	يوصل/ يحضر	blocked (adj.)	مسدود
household things	أغراض منزلية	deep (adj.)	عميق
fill (v.)	يملأ	polluted (adj.)	ملوثة
land	أرض	sell (v.)	يبيع
a plan	خطة	produce (v.)	ينتج
fields	حقول	Egyptian bread	الخبز المصرى
awesome (adj.)	رائع	changes	تغيرات
proud (adj.)	فخور	grow up (v.)	يكبر
agriculture	الزراعة		

Expressions and Phrases

do homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلى	do research	يقوم بعمل بحث
to like (something) best	يحب (شيئًا) أكثر من أى شىء آخر	get together	يتجمع
in the center	فى وسط	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
clear the trash	يزيل (يتخلص من) القمامة	come back	يعود
become easier	يصبح أسهل	in a few years	فى خلال السنوات القليلة
everything is better	كل شىء فى تحسن	walk around	يتجول

B Story Elements

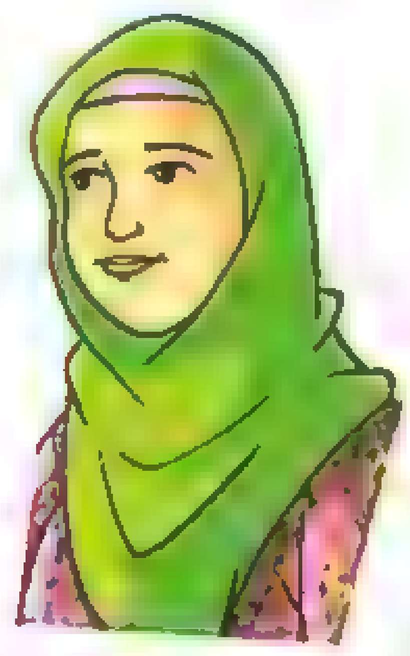
Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Characters الشخصيات

Main characters
الشخصيات الرئيسية



Dalia
داليا



Gameela (Dalia's mom)
جميلة (والدة داليا)



Waleed (Dalia's dad)
وليد (والد داليا)



the villagers
أهل القرية



Tarek (Dalia's brother)
طارق (أخو داليا)



Dalia's grandma
جدة داليا

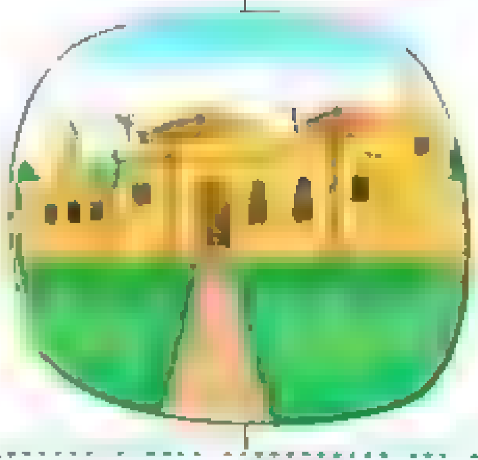


Dalia's grandpa
جد داليا

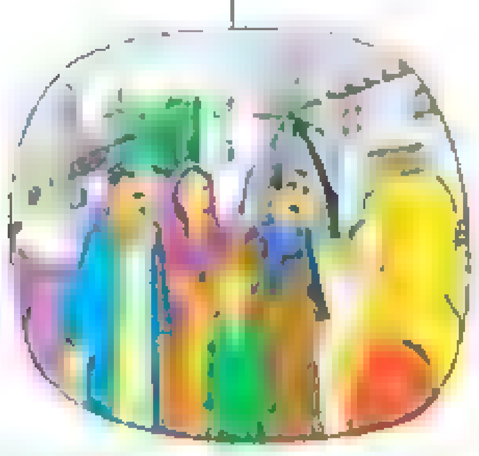
Setting
المكان



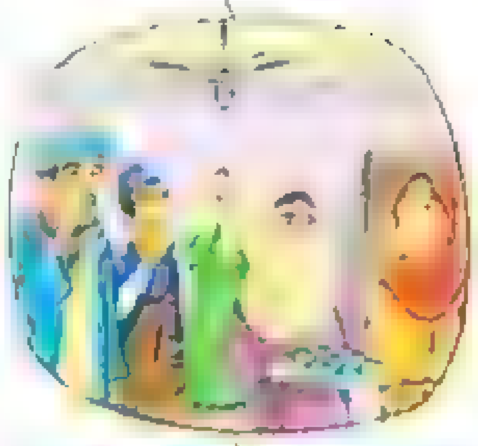
Dalia's house
منزل داليا



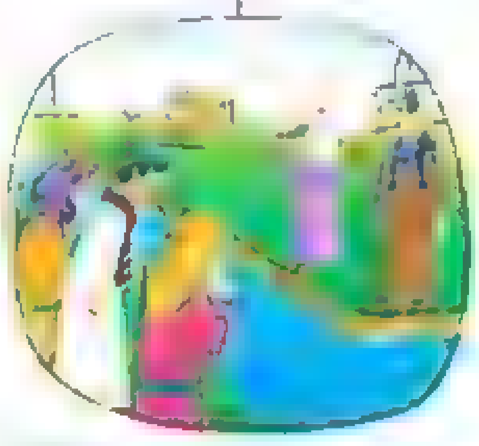
the village
القرية



the main square
الميدان الرئيسى



Dalia's grandparents' house
منزل أجداد داليا



the irrigation canal banks
ضفاف قناة الرى



Grandma's kitchen
مطبخ الجدة

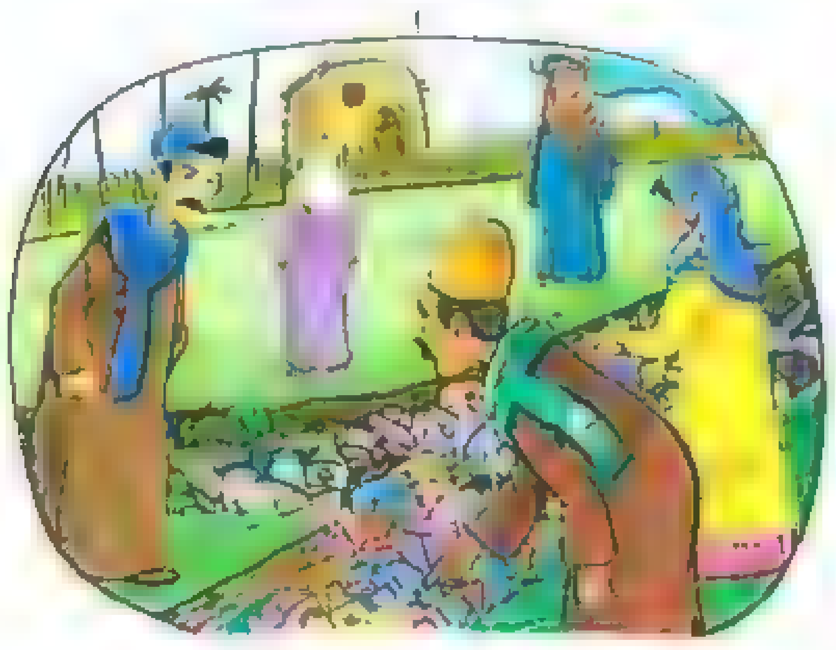
Plot
الحبكة



The Beginning

Dalia discusses the irrigation problem in the village with her family. She wants to help the village. She calls everyone in the village on social media to tell them about the problem.

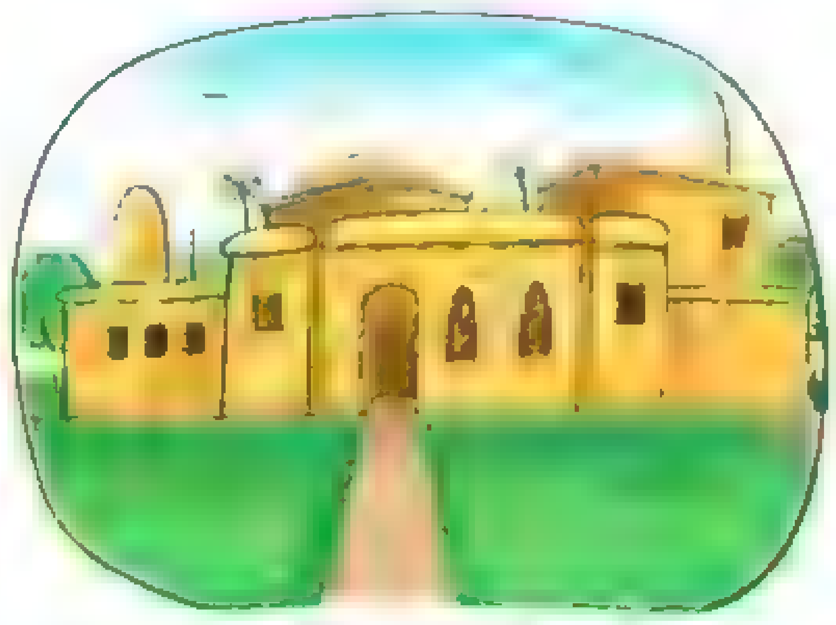
تناقش داليا مشكلة الرى فى القرية مع عائلتها. تريد داليا مساعدة القرية. تتصل داليا بجميع سكان القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى لتخبرهم عن المشكلة.



The Middle

Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal is blocked with trash. The villagers clear the trash. The water is clean now in the canal.

تذهب داليا وعائلتها لمعاينة المشكلة. هناك انسداد فى قناة الرى بسبب القمامة. يزيل أهل القرية القمامة. المياه نظيفة الآن فى القناة.



The End

The water is back to the village. People can grow crops again. They grow more different crops like wheat. Everything is better now in the village.

يعود جريان المياه مرة أخرى إلى القرية. يستطيع أهل القرية زراعة المحاصيل مجددًا. يزرعون أيضًا أنواعًا مختلفة من المحاصيل مثل القمح. كل شىء فى تحسن الآن فى القرية.

Story

Listen, read and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning



Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. One evening she is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt, like wheat, maize, and rice, and it is very interesting. Wheat is an important crop in our country and we use it to make bread. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread. Dalia likes baladi bread best. Which is your favorite?

تعيش داليا فى قرية فى مصر. ذات ليلة، تقوم بعمل واجبها المنزلى على الكمبيوتر. تقوم بعمل بحث عن بعض المحاصيل فى مصر مثل القمح والذرة والأرز، وهذا شيق للغاية. يعتبر القمح محصولاً مهمًا فى بلدنا حيث نستخدمه فى صناعة الخبز. تنظر داليا لصور خبز مصرى شهى. تحب داليا الخبز البلدى أكثر من أى نوع آخر. ما هو النوع المفضل لديك؟



Dalia's mom, Gameela, is speaking to Dalia's dad, Waleed, who looks sad. 'The crops are not growing well in the village. There is a problem with the water and we have no irrigation,' says Gameela to Dalia. 'We need to help everyone in the village with their crops.' Dalia's brother, Tarek, says, 'But what can we do?' Dalia says, 'It's very simple. Let's call everyone in the village on social media. We need to help our village'.

تحدث جميلة (والدة داليا) إلى وليد (والد داليا) الذى يبدو حزينًا. تقول جميلة لداليا: «لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد فى القريه. توجد مشكلة متعلقة بالمياه ولا يوجد لدينا رى". «يجب علينا مساعدة كل فرد يمتلك محصولًا فى القرية». يقول طارق أخو داليا: «لكن ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل ؟» تقول داليا: «إنه أمر سهل للغايه. دعنا نتواصل مع كل فرد فى القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى». نحن نحتاج أن نساعد قريتنا.



Dalia's family gets water from the Nile. But the irrigation canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on social media, then meets everyone in the main square. A lot of villagers say they can help.

تحصل عائلة داليا على المياه من نهر النيل. لكن قناة الرى لا تعمل. تخبر داليا الجميع فى القرية بهذه المشكلة من خلال وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى ثم تلتقى بالجميع فى الميدان الرئيسى. يقول الكثير من أهل القرية إنهم يمكنهم تقديم المساعدة.



The next day everyone gets together in the center of the village. Some people come on foot, and some by bike. Some people come by boat or by car from another village to help.

Everyone is very excited to help with the problem. They meet at Dalia's grandparents' house. Dalia's grandma gives them tea and cookies.

فى اليوم التالى يجتمع الجميع فى وسط القرية. يأتى بعض الأفراد سيرًا على الأقدام والبعض الآخر باستخدام الدراجة. يأتى بعض الأشخاص بالقارب أو بالسيارة من قرية أخرى ليقدموا المساعدة. الجميع متحمسون لحل المشكلة. يلتقى الجميع فى منزل أجداد داليا. تقدم لهم جدة داليا الشاى والبسكويت (الكوكيز) .

The Middle

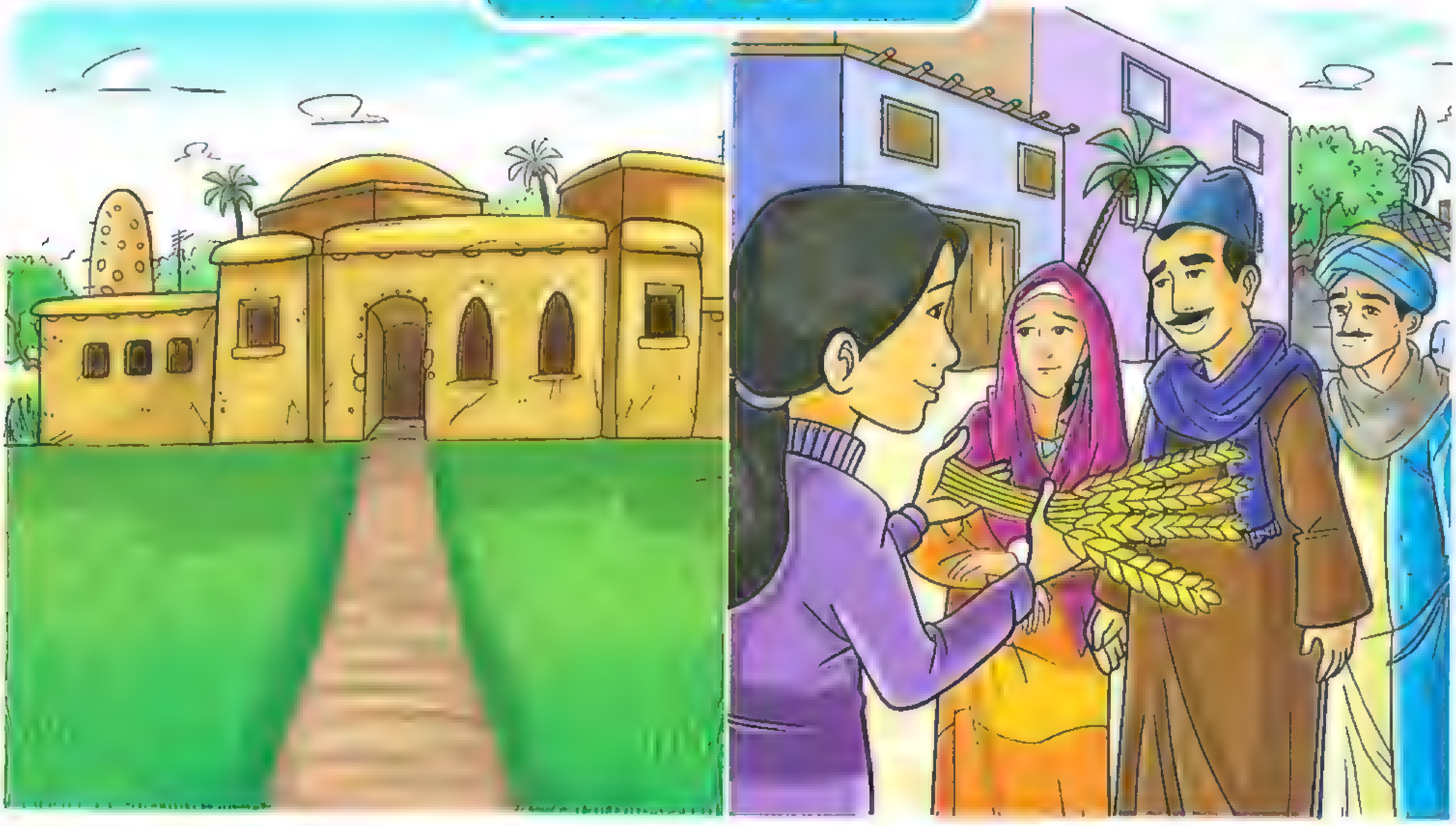


Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal that brings the water is blocked with trash – plastic bottles and household things. There are also some plants in the water. Tarek says, 'We need to start work and clean the water.' The water is not very deep and they start to clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. Now the water isn't polluted.

تذهب داليا وعائلتها لمعاينة المشكلة. وجدوا أن قناة الري التي توصل المياه مسدودة بالقمامة كزجاجات بلاستيكية وأغراض منزلية. كما يوجد بعض النباتات في المياه. يقول طارق «يجب علينا بدء العمل وتنظيف المياه». المياه ليست عميقة للغاية ويبدأ الجميع بإزالة القمامة.

يملأ أهل القرية 20 كيس قمامة بالقمامة الموجودة. الآن، المياه غير ملوثة.

The End



The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again. Everyone is very happy. They can grow food on their land and they can sell their fruit and vegetables to buy other things. Their lives become easier. But some of the crops are not very good.

Dalia has a plan. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat – she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes.

Some villagers like the idea – they start to grow wheat in some of their fields.

يعود جريان المياه إلى القرية ونمو المحاصيل مجددًا. الجميع سعداء للغاية. يستطيعون الآن زراعة الغذاء على أرضهم ويستطيعون بيع الفاكهة والخضراوات الخاصة بهم لشراء أشياء أخرى. تصبح حياتهم أسهل. لكن بعض المحاصيل ليست بحالة جيدة. لدى داليا خطة. تعتقد أن أهل القرية يمكنهم إنتاج أغذية أكثر. فعليهم تجربة زراعة القمح. تخبرهم داليا عن بحثها. وتقول إن القمح ينمو بشكل جيد جدًّا فى مصر وهو جيد لصناعة خبز لذيذ وكعك. يعجب بعض من أهل القرية بالفكرة. ويبدءون بزراعة القمح فى بعض حقولهم.



From the wheat, they can make flour. From the flour, they can make delicious Egyptian bread. Grandma can make more of her awesome cookies. The villagers make bread and cookies to sell to other villages.

يمكنهم صناعة الدقيق من القمح. من الدقيق يمكنهم صناعة الخبز المصرى الشهى. تستطيع الجدة صنع المزيد من البسكويت (الكوكيز) الرائع الخاص بها. يصنع أهل القرية الخبز والبسكويت (الكوكيز) ليتمكنوا من بيعها إلى القرى الأخرى.



In a few years, everything is better in the village. Dalia walks around the village and sees the changes. She is very proud. When she grows up, she works with agriculture to help other people with their crops.

فى حلال سنوات قليلة، أصبح كل شيء أفضل فى القرية. تتجول داليا حول القرية وتمعن نظرها على التغييرات. هى فخورة جدًا. عندما تكبر ستعمل فى مجال الزراعة لتساعد المزيد من الناس فى زراعة محاصيلهم.

Story Summary

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

There is a problem in the village where Dalia lives.

توجد مشكلة فى القرية التى تعيش فيها داليا.

The problem المشكلة



What is the problem in the village?

ماهى المشكلة الموجودة فى القرية؟

The crops aren't growing well. There is a problem with the irrigation canal. It's blocked with trash.

لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد. توجد مشكلة متعلقة بقناة الرى. إنها مسدودة بالقمامة.

The process الطريقة



What does Dalia do? ماذا تفعل داليا؟

Dalia tells everyone in the village about the problem on social media. She meets them in the main square to help with the problem.

تخبر داليا جميع أهل القرية عن المشكلة عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. تقابل داليا أهل القرية فى الميدان الرئيسى لحل المشكلة .

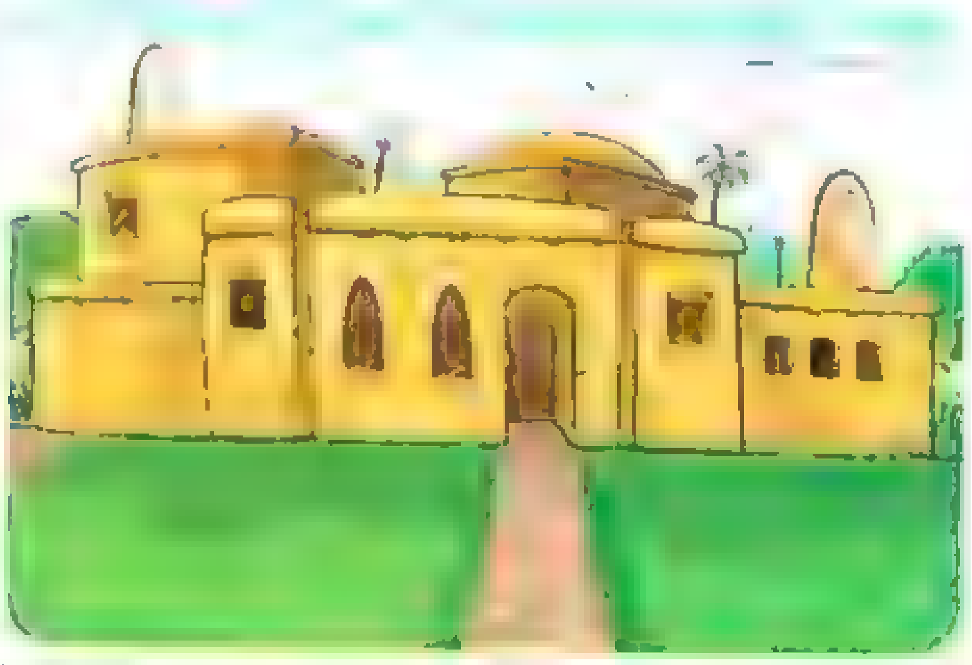


What do the villagers do? ماذا يفعل أهل القرية؟

The villagers clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with trash.

يزيل أهل القرية القمامة. يقومون بملء 20 كيسًا من أكياس القمامة بالقمامة الموجودة.

The solution/conclusion الحل (نهاية المشكلة)



What is the result? ما هى النتيجة؟

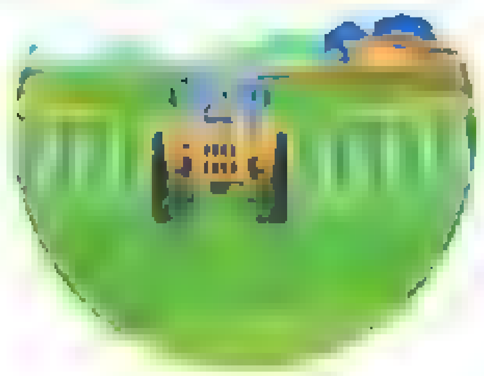
The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again.

يعود جريان المياه مرة أخرى الى القرية وتنمو المحاصيل مجددًا.

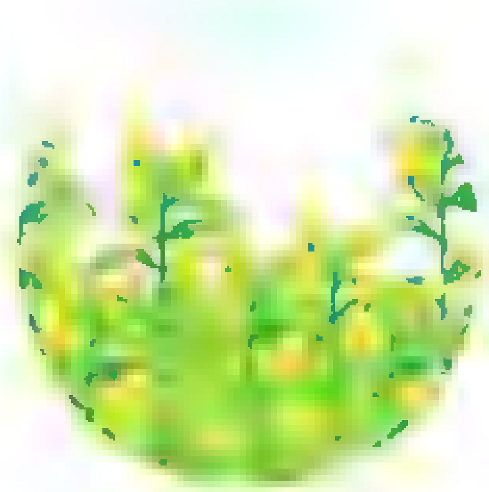
Story

GENERAL PRACTICE

1 Unscramble and write: أعد الترتيب واكتب:

1 
rrigitiano
....

2 
eawth
....

3 
oprc
....

4 
heatw loufr
....

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A

1 Dalia meets the villagers ...
2 The villagers ...
3 Dalia's grandma gives the villagers ...
4 Dalia and her family live ...

B

a. ( ) in a village.
b. ( ) in the main square.
c. ( ) clean the canal with the others. SB
d. ( ) tea and cookies.

3 Look, read, and reorder: انظر، اقرأ وأعد الترتيب:

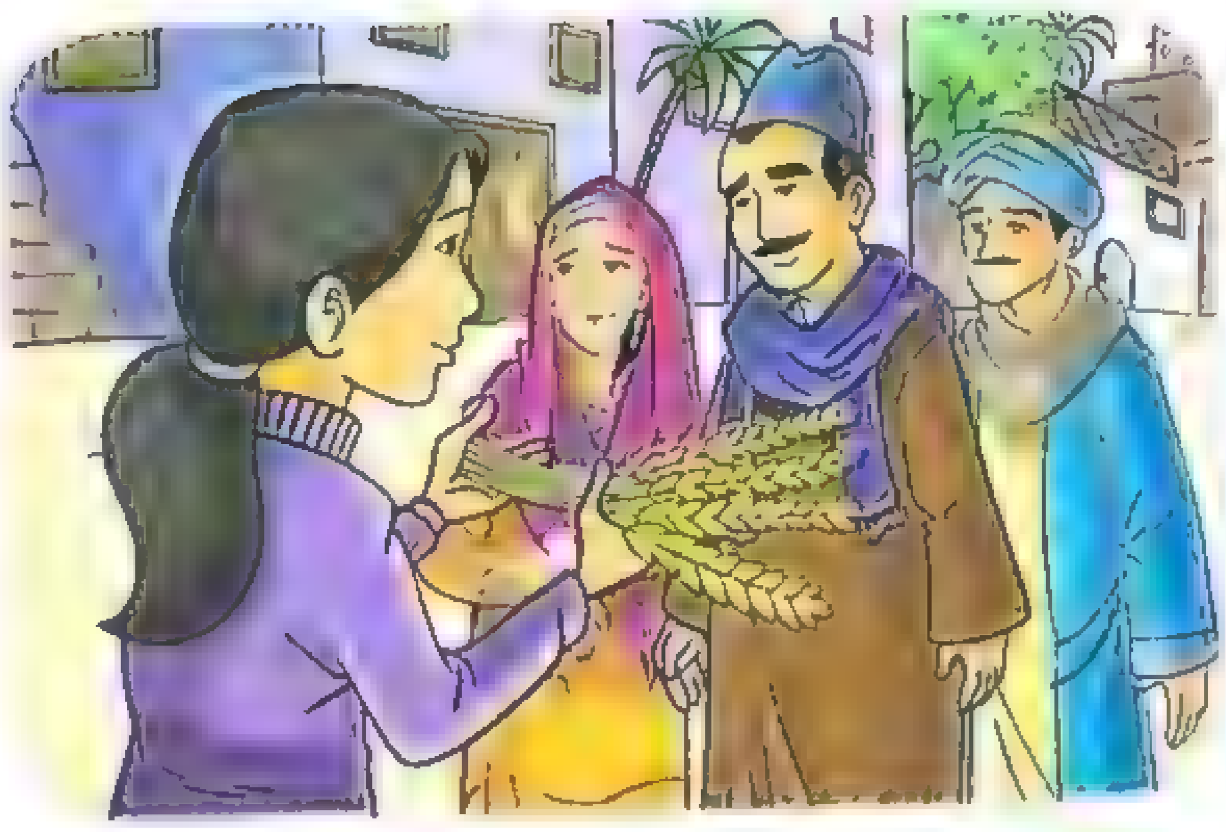

A lot of villagers say they can help Dalia.


The villagers clear the trash.


Dalia calls everyone in the village on social media.


The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again.

4 Look, read, and answer: انظر، اقرأ ثم أجب:



Dalia has a plan. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat – she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes.

1 Circle the characters you can see.

Gameela Tarek Dalia

2 What is Dalia's plan?

....

3 Can we make bread from wheat?

....

5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 bread – likes – Dalia – baladi.

....

2 blocked – The canal – with – is – trash.

....

3 excited – with – help – Everyone – is – to – the problem.

....

4 in – a village – lives – Dalia – in Egypt.

....

6 Read and answer the following questions: اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1 How can Dalia call everyone in the village?

....

2 What is Dalia's research about?

....

3 How many trash bags do the villagers fill?

....

4 What is the problem in the village?

....

TAPE SCRIPTS

UNIT 7

Practice on Lesson 1

The Nile River is the longest River in the world. It is 6,670 kilometers long. It brings life to the whole of Egypt. It is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. The Nile has two branches in Egypt.

Practice on Lesson 2

Grandpa lived in a small village when he was young. The village was near the river. It was very quiet when he lived there. He played football on the street with his friends. There were no cars or trucks then.

Practice on Lesson 3

The city mouse visited the country mouse last week. The country mouse was pleased and excited. He gave him grass and seeds. The city mouse invited him to come with him to the city. The country mouse agreed. They took the train there!

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

I am doing a history project in my school about my town. I looked at old photos and talked to my neighbors to find many information. My friend said that his grandparents used to drove gas cars and they were very noisy.

Test Yourself on Unit 7

The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It's like traveling to the center of the Earth. It has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is home to different kinds of fish, birds, and animals. It brings life to the whole of Egypt.

Al-Azhar Corner

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It has two branches in Egypt. It brings life to the whole of Egypt.

UNIT 8

Practice on Lesson 1

Yesterday, we had a party. We went to the supermarket and bought many things for the party. We bought five packets of cookies. We bought six cartons of orange juice. We bought four packets of candies. We also bought ten slices of pizza.

Practice on Lesson 2

Last weekend, we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish! We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert.

Practice on Lesson 3

Eid Al-Fitr is my favorite Muslim festival. Eid comes after the month of Ramadan. We eat kahk. Kahk are delicious cookies. We go to the mosque and we spend time with our family. We also eat delicious food.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandpa was 90 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

Test Yourself on Unit 8

Last Monday we went to Alexandria to see my grandparents who live by the sea. We swam in the water. It was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish and my grandpa caught a big fish, too. Grandma made the fish into a lovely dish.

Al-Azhar Corner

Last weekend, we visited our grandparents who live by the sea. We swam in the sea. We saw lots of fish in the water which was deep and blue.

UNIT 9

Practice on Lesson 1

To play "Pass the parcel", you need a present, music, and lots of paper. First, wrap a small present and cover it with lots of paper. The players sit in a circle and pass the present as the music plays.

Practice on Lesson 3

Egypt is a big country that is famous for its history. We often celebrate its rich culture. There are many things that can make us special. Our food can be described as wonderful. Egyptian people are friendly and hospitable. More than half of the Egyptians are under the age of 30.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Dear Heba,

I'm inviting you to come to my sister's birthday party next Monday. The whole class will be there. We can play some party games and sing songs, so bring some music so we can play Musical chairs. The party will be in my house. Hope you can come.

Yours, Dalia

Test Yourself on Unit 9

To play Pass the parcel, wrap a small present and cover it with lots of paper. Players sit in a circle. Play some music. Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present unwraps one piece of paper and so on.

Al-Azhar Corner

Marwa was at La Tomatina festival last Month. It takes place in Spain. She had a lot of fun and everything was red.

UNIT 10

Practice on Lesson 1

Dalia is in grade four. She is doing her homework about chameleons. Dalia thinks that chameleons are interesting because they can change color as the place where they are. She logged into the school library and created a password to get information.

Practice on Lesson 2

My cousin Adam is 13 years old. He has an account on social media. He likes to share ideas, thoughts, and information with other people. Adam is always careful when he is online. He accepts to be a friend only with people he knows.

Practice on Lesson 3

Playing computer games for too much time isn't healthy for children. They don't have enough time to do homework or play outside. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do other things like playing sports.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family. I also like computer games where I go outside. We like these games because you find a prize at the end.

Test Yourself on Unit 10

It's important to be safe online. You should have strong passwords. You should also be friends only with people you know. It's also important to keep your passwords and personal information secret. Don't bully and don't be a bully.

Al-Azhar Corner

Dalia is doing homework about chameleons. She thinks they are amazing because they can change color.

UNIT 11

Practice on Lesson 2

It's important to be safe on the road. You need a helmet on your bike. You need a seat belt in your car. You need the green light to cross the road. You need to look right and left before you cross the road.

Practice on Lesson 3

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. The teachers are very kind. Mazen and Dalida go to school together. They always cross the road on the crosswalk and wait for the cars to stop. They never cross the road until the light is green.

Practice on Lesson 4

Cities have many cars. Cars cause air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

Practice on Lessons 5 & 6

To stop air pollution, my family decided to change some things. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I cycle to school. My sister Noura walks to school because her school is nearer.

Test Yourself on Unit 11

Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, children walk or cycle to school. In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses that don't pollute the air. In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers stopped burning rice straw.

Al-Azhar Corner

Hala needs to be safe on the road. She needs a helmet on her bike. She only cycles at the side of the road.


CONNECT
4
PRIM

Contents

PART 1 FINAL REVISION

Unit 7

city	مدينة	building	مبنى
river	نهر	forest	غابة
desert	صحراء	village	قرية
oasis	واحة	mountain	جبل
kilometer	كيلومتر لوحدة قياس الأطوال	center	مركز
the Nile	نهر النيل	branches	فروع
visitors	زوار	memories	ذكريات
metal (adj.)	معدني	smile	ابتسامة
quiet (adj.)	هادئ	trucks	شاحنات
ground	أرض	space	مكان
hole	حفرة	curious (adj.)	فضولي
delighted	مبتهج	pleased	مسرور
mice	فئران	bright	لامع
smoke	دخان	lights	أضواء
noise	ضوضاء	nervous (adj.)	عصبي / متوتر
backpack	حقيبة ظهر	gate	بوابة

eɪ		iː		aɪ		əʊ	
gave	أعطى	see	يرى	my	ملكي	no	لا
wait	ينتظر	pleased	مسرور	bright	لامع	hole	حفرة
train	قطار	seeds	بذور	lights	أضواء	know	يعرف
eight	ثمانية	eating	يأكل	why	لماذا	go	يذهب
rain	مطر	me	أنا	delighted	مبتهج	slow	بطيء
				excited	متحمس	smoke	دخان
				life	حياة		
				mice	فئران		

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

The past simple tense is used for expressing an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time

1. Regular verbs:

Subject فاعل + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + (ed/ d/ ied) ـ



We played football on this street

ed We add "ed" at the end of most regular verbs

e.g. look ➡ looked

d When the verb ends in "e" we add only "d" at the end of the verb.

e.g. live ➡ lived

ied When the verb ends in " " preceded by a consonant letter, we delete the " " and add " ed" at the end of the verb

e.g. bury ➡ bur ed

doubling When a verb ends in a consonant preceded by we double the last consonant when adding the "ed"

e.g. stop ➡ stopped

2. Irregular verbs:

Some verbs don't follow the rules and change in form when they come in the past tense

Present	Past	Present	Past
(be) am / is	was	(be) are	were
grow	grew	say	said
have	had	sit	sat
feel	felt	see	saw
find	found	know	knew



The village was quiet in the past

Subject + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل



He didn't play football yesterday.

A. Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... ?

B. Yes, ⎤ subject ⎡

B. No, ⎦ ⎣



A. Did you jump today?

B. Yes, I did

Question word		subject	( ) مصدر الفعل	?

B Subject (الفعل) +



What subjects did you study yesterday?

B I studied English

yesterday → I went to school yesterday

last (week, month, year, etc.) → She played tennis last week.

ago → We lived here many years ago

guess		checked
choose		decided
remember		carried
	found	gave

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We live in a small .... in the countryside.
   a) village b) mountain c) forest d) city
2. The .... is a place where there are many large trees.
   a) river b) forest c) building d) desert
3. The Nile is a/an ....
   a) building b) river c) oasis d) desert
4. There are tall buildings in big ....
   a) mountains b) rivers c) cities d) oases

1. It's not easy to climb a ....
   a) river b) village c) forest d) mountain
2. The country mouse lives in a .... in the ground.
   a) hole b) mountain c) city d) train
3. There are no plants in the ....
   a) village b) desert c) forest d) river
4. The Nile has two .... in Egypt.
   a) rivers b) branches c) countries d) forests

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

branches – eleven – crocodile – earth – fish

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It's 6,670 kilometers long. It's like traveling to the center of the ....(1).... It travels through ....(2).... countries. It's home for different kinds of ....(3)...., birds, and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile ....(4)...., lives in it. It is the second largest reptile in the world.

busy – trucks – quiet – were – played

Grandpa lived in a village in Luxor in Egypt. It was .... (1) .... in the past. Now, there are lots of visitors. My grandpa .... (2) .... football with his friends in the street when he was young. There .... (3) .... no cars then. Now, there are many cars and .... (4) .... on the road.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The Nile river is the (long) .... river in the world.
2. It ([illegible]) .... very quiet when my grandpa lived here.
3. Now, there (be) .... lots of visitors.
4. (do) .... you go to school yesterday?

1. This is where I ([illegible]) .... when I was a child.
2. We ([illegible]) .... eight when we buried the box.
3. I (don't) .... see Ola yesterday.
4. We (play) .... football in this street yesterday.

Unit 8

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
a packet of cookies	عبوة بسكويت (كوكيز)
a carton of juice	علبة عصير
a slice of cake	شريحة كيك
soap	صابونة
party	حفلة
octopus	أخطبوط
frozen (adj.)	مجمد
information	معلومات
Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
oldest (adj.)	أقدم
Sham El-Nessim	شم النسيم
celebration	احتفال
special (adj.)	مميز
nuts	مكسرات
Muslim	مسلم
cousins	أولاد العم
party	حفلة
a bar of chocolate	قالب من الشيكولاتة
a bottle of water	زجاجة من الماء
a piece of cheese	قطعة جبنة
meat	لحمة
Damietta	دمياط
dessert	حلوى
jellyfish	قنديل البحر
festival	احتفال
kahk	كعك
sunset	غروب الشمس
Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي
mosque	مسجد
great-grandma	والدة الجدة
bakery	مخبز
colored (adj.)	ملون

Important sentences (Egyptian festivals)

Eid Al-Fitr

- Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.
- Eid happens on the first day of the 10th Islamic month called Shawwal.
- People eat lots of kahk, say "Eid Mubarak", and go to the mosque and spend time with their families to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.

Sham El-Nessim

- It's the oldest Egyptian festival.
- It comes the day after Coptic Easter.
- People eat salted fish and colored eggs. They have picnics with their families to celebrate Sham El-Nessim.

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular Verbs

Subject فاعل + فعل [illegible]



I [illegible] pizza yesterday

irregular verbs — **أفعال غير منتظمة**

Present		Past	Present		Past
buy	يشتري	bought	forget	ينسى	forgot
fly	يطير	flew	cut	يقطع	cut
hear	يسمع	heard	come	يأتي	came
give	يعطي	gave	say	يقول	said
write	يكتب	wrote	run	يجري	ran
throw	يرمي	threw	have	يملك	had
feel	يشعر	felt	sing	يغني	sang
see	يرى	saw	make	يصنع	made
go	يذهب	went	swim	يعوم	swam
am/is	يكون	was	are	يكونوا	were
catch	يمسك	caught	drink	يشرب	drank

Quest on word ______ subject ( ) مصدر الفعل ?

b Subject (الفاعل) +



What d you d last weekend?



I swam in the sea

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
go		am/is	
catch			made
	ate	sing	
forget			flew
throw		fast	
	celebrated	think	
can			decorated
run			drank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I ate a .... of pizza.
   a) packet b) bottle c) slice d) carton
2. She sang a .... at the party.
   a) photo b) fish c) song d) meal
3. He drank a bottle of ....
   a) soap b) bread c) water d) cookies
4. She'd like a slice of ...., please.
   a) juice b) water c) cake d) lemonade

1. The mouse ate a .... of cheese.
   a) piece b) carton c) bottle d) bar
2. Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim ....
   a) month b) festival c) book d) movie
3. The month before Eid is called " .... ".
   a) Shawwal b) Ramadan c) June d) April
4. .... are cookies that have nuts, sugar and honey in them.
   a) Cakes b) Kahk c) Yogurt d) Salted fish

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hungry – carton – cooked – thirsty – packet

Adel went to his friend Hossam's birthday party yesterday. Adel had a nice time. He was .... (1) .... so he had two slices of vanilla cake and a .... (2) .... of cookies. Snacks .... (3) .... delicious, too so he ate two bars of chocolate and a .... (4) .... of apple juice.

B sang – made – swam – ate – fish

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We .... (1) .... in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of .... (2) .... Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma .... (3) .... into a lovely dish! At night, we saw some old photos and .... (4) .... a song.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

A

1. Hana (drink) .... some juice at the party yesterday.
2. I (not be) .... thirsty so I had only little water.
3. Last weekend, we (swim) .... in the sea.
4. They didn't (saw) .... lots of fish on their last vacation.

B

1. Habiba (eat) .... a nice meal at the restaurant last night.
2. What did you (had) .... for lunch yesterday?
3. (Do) .... she sing at the party last week?
4. Last Friday (be) .... a day to remember.

Unit 9

Vocabulary

Pass the parcel	لعبة نقل الطرود	guests	ضيوف
Hide and seek	لعبة الغميضة	Musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية
give presents	يعطي الهدايا	play games	يلعب الألعاب
wrap presents	يلف الهدايا	open presents	يفتح الهدايا
traditional	تقليدي	play music	يعزف الموسيقى
popular	مشهور	ready	جاهز
seeker	باحث	wide	واسع
country	دولة، بلد	winner	فائز
rich (adj.)	غني	history	تاريخ
garlic	ثوم	culture	ثقافة
syrup	شراب السكر	semolina	دقيق السميد
Sinai region	منطقة سيناء	hospitable	مضياف
mud	طين	author	مؤلف
monsters	وحوش	cheese rolling	دحرجة الجبن
wonderful	رائع	envelope	ظرف
information	معلومات	hill	تل
address	عنوان	invitation	دعوة

Important Sentences: What makes Egypt special?

- Egyptian food can be described as wonderful.
- Egyptian people are hospitable and friendly to visitors.
- 90% of Egypt is desert, but we have green lands around the Nile.
- Egypt has famous authors who won important prizes. Egyptians also love sports.

Making adjectives

We can make an adjective by add ng (l) to the end of a verb or noun.

noun or verb + (-ful) = adjective

care	→ care	pa n	→ pa nt	he p	→ he p		
wonder	→ wonder	use	→ use	color	→ co or		



I hurt my arm. It is po nt.

[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
wrap		join	
	sat	keep	
put		hide	
snow			thought
	won	push	
	pulled	wish	
throw		fly	
	wore		brought

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... are peop e who write movies and stories.
   a) P ayers b) Authors c) Sports d) Seekers
2. The player who .... the present keeps t
   a) wraps b) unwraps c) sits d) p ays
3. We love play ng "............ and seek".
   a) Run b) Jump c) Dance d) Hide
4. The Egyptian food is ....
   a) careful b) wonderful c) pa nfu d) co orfu

1. You need ...., presents and people to p ay "Pass the parcel"
   a) paper b) music c) space d) chairs
2. I'm always .... when I'm on my b ke
   a) useful b) careful c) pa nfu d) wonderful
3. When someone is .... he is friendly and welcoming to visitors.
   a) careful b) hosp table c) useful d) colorful
4. My favor te party game is the "Musical ...."
   a) tables b) chairs c) amps d) couches

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

last – seeker – place – f rst – h de

Hide and seek is a very old and popu ar game Al you need s a wide (1) .... to p ay it One p ayer, ca led the (2) ...., closes h s or her eyes and counts to ten The other players (3) .... The seeker tries to find them The (4) .... player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker

special – helpful – energy – hospitable – wonderful

A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. There are many things that make us .... (1) .... Our food can be described with one word .... (2) .... Egyptians are .... (3) .... to each other and they are very friendly to visitors. They are very .... (4) .... people.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I fell off the chair. It was (pain) ....
2. The party was full of (color) .... balloons.
3. People pushed the cheese and (run) .... after it.
4. The sky (be) .... full of colorful kites yesterday.

1. Everything (be) .... red in La Tomatina Festival last week.
2. Mona (eat) .... fish with her friend two days ago.
3. Rana helped me yesterday. She's very (help) ....
4. The pen you gave me was really (use) ....

Unit 10

Vocabulary

message	يرسل/ رسالة	chat	يحادث/ محادثة
password	كلمة المرور	do research	يجري بحثًا
log in	يقوم بتسجيل الدخول	chameleon	حرباء
interesting (adj.)	شيق/ ممتع	same	نفس، مثل
presentation	عرض تقديمي	respectful (adj.)	محترم
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	adult	شخص بالغ
ideas	أفكار	bullying	التنمر
late (adj.)	متأخر	thoughts	معتقدات
scary (adj.)	مخيف	devices	أجهزة
creative (adj.)	مبدع	personal information	معلومات شخصية
stupid (adj.)	غبي	ugly (adj.)	قبيح
apartment	شقة	screen	شاشة
reasons	أسباب	prize	جائزة
neighbor	جار	computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
unhealthy (adj.)	غير صحي	problem	مشكلة
son	ابن	restaurant	مطعم
lovely (adj.)	رائعة	pros	إيجابيات
cons	سلبيات	advice	نصيحة

Giving advice

We use "should" to talk about things that are good for us to do

Subject + should + inf.



I should keep my personal information secret

We use "shouldn't" to talk about things that are bad for us to do.

Subject + shouldn't + inf.



I shouldn't give my password to anyone who asks

[illegible]	[illegible]	Present	[illegible]
	logged into	chat	
copy		do	
find		share	
	wrote	contact	
tag		bully	
	accepted		asked
	stopped	answer	
	met	find	
solve			interviewed

Exercises on Unit 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

A

1. .... change color.
   a) Elephants b) Chameleons c) Giraffes d) Lions
2. I shouldn't tell anyone my ....
   a) thoughts b) ideas c) feelings d) personal information
3. People can .... you in photos when you don't want them to.
   a) message b) research c) tag d) create
4. She used her password to .... the school's library.
   a) log into b) chat c) message d) contact

B

1. The students need to .... a research about chameleons.
   a) make b) do c) create d) ca
2. We can log into useful .... to get the information we need.
   a) chats b) messages c) passwords d) websites
3. I created a .... to get information from the library website.
   a) website b) password c) research d) presentation
4. She knows some great .... where she can get information.
   a) chameleons b) websites c) chats d) passwords

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

games contact learn information photos

"Social media" is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and ....(1).......... and have fun. There are many pros for social media. We can share ....(2).......... or talk to family and friends. We can ....(3).......... interesting things or find information for our homework. We can play ....(4).......... too.

spend – bad – solve – outside – good

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can ……(1)…… many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go ……(2)…… or do their homework. On the other hand, some computer games are ……(3)…… for children. In some games, children need to ……(4)…… problems.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I should (to keep) …………………… my password secret.
2. You (should) …………………… tell anyone your personal information.
3. You can (talk) …………………… to friends and family on social media.
4. Some people can (to bully) …………………… you online.

1. You (shouldn't) …………………… be safe online.
2. People you don't know can (to contact) …………………… you.
3. You can (played) …………………… games on social media.
4. (Didn't) …………………… copy information. Be respectful.

Unit 11

bus	أتوبيس	boat	قارب (مركب)
plane	طائرة	ship	سفينة
train	قطار	car	سيارة
metro	مترو الأنفاق	airport	مطار
rail	سكة حديد	water	مياه
air	الهواء / الجو	road	طريق
station	محطة	vehicle	مركبة
helmet	خوذة	seat belt	حزام أمان
straight	مستقيم	motorbike	دراجة بخارية
crosswalk	ممر المشاة	shocked	مصدوم
ambulance	سيارة الإسعاف	pollution	تلوث
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	dangerous	خطر
driving	مسح	China	الصين
burning	حرق	straw	قش
crops	محاصيل	Paris	باريس
Copenhagen	كوبنهاجن	Denmark	الدانمارك
solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	asthma	مرض الربو

cr /kr/

crowd	زحمة	crash	يصطدم	crosswalk	معبر المشاة

tr /tr/

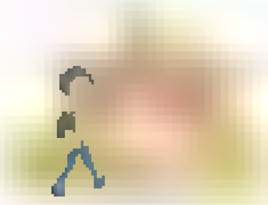
truck	شاحنة	train	قطار

Diphthongs

ai /eɪ/	rain	مطر	snail	حلزون	train	قطار
oa /əʊ/	boat	مركب	coat	معطف	float	تطفو
ea /iː/	clean	نظيف	dream	حلم	sea	بحر

Prepositions with means of transportation

foot   water



I go to school on foot.

car   bus   train   ship   boat   plane



We travel to Aswan by train.

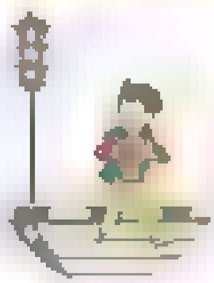
We use "need" when something is important or necessary.

Subject + ~~need~~ + noun

Subject + ~~need to~~ + (inf)



You need a helmet on your bike.

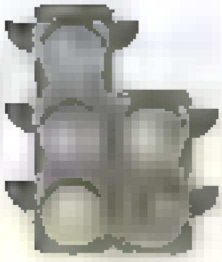


You need to look left and right.

must

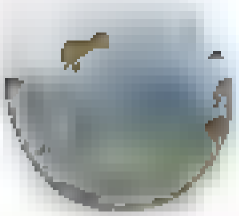
We use "must" or "mustn't" for strong advice

Subject ([illegible]) + [illegible] + ([illegible]) [illegible]



You must wait for the green lights before you cross the road

Subject ([illegible]) + mustn't + (inf.) [illegible]



You mustn't run on roads

Present	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
interview			came
stop		drive	
travel		ride	
	moved	stop	
breathe			allowed
cycle		put	
	went		ate
	bought		hurt

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I go to the club on ....

a) ship b) foot c) car d) bus

2 You need a .... in your car.

a) seat belt b) helmet c) crosswalk d) vehicle

3 Air pollution is very .... for us.

a) dangerous b) good c) nice d) amazing

4 When I travel by bus, I am on the ....

a) water b) air c) road d) foot

1 She travels to London by ....

a) plane b) foot c) bike d) water

2 Please, cross the road on the ....

a) vehicle b) bike c) crosswalk d) green light

3 Cars make air ....

a) pollution b) clouds c) stars d) rain

4 You need to follow the road ....

a) sights b) signs c) sites d) sides

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

crosswalks – car – signs – helmet – light

It's important to be safe on the road. You need a ....(1).......... on your bike. You need a seat belt in your ....(2).......... . You need a green ....(3).......... before you cross the road. You should cross the road at the ....(4).......... . You also need to look left and right before you cross.

animals straw cycle cough farmers

Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we ....(1)........ and feel sick. Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In Gharbia, Egypt, ...(2)........ wanted to have cleaner air. To do that, they stopped burning rice ....(3)......... They used the straw to make food for their ....(4)........ and cover their crops.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

A

1. You (need) .... a seat belt in your car.
2. I go to the club (by) .... foot.
3. They go to work (in) .... train.
4. We can (to have) .... more plants in our balconies.

B

1. You (must) .... stop and wait for a green light.
2. You (needs) .... to look left and right.
3. (Not) .... cross from behind a car.
4. You mustn't (drive) .... too fast in public roads.

Unit 7

"The River Nile"

The River Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. No River Nile, no Egypt. The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. It's like traveling to the center of the Earth. The Nile helps farmers grow many plants in Egypt.

"The city life"

I live in a city. The city is bright and full of lights. There are a lot of cars in the city. There is a lot of smoke, too. The city is exciting. I love living in the city.

"My first day at school"

I remember my first day at school. I was six years old. I was very nervous and didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt and gray pants. I met my new friend who is called Ali. The next day, I wasn't nervous, and I wanted to see my new friend.

Unit 8

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. People usually go to the mosque. They buy kahk from the bakery.

"Sham El-Nessim"

Sham El-Nessim is the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. Children go to parks and play. People go to gardens with their families. I like Sham El-Nessim because I always have picnics with my family, and we have a great time together.

"My grandpa's birthday"

My grandpa's birthday was yesterday. We had a nice party at my grandparents' house. All the family came to celebrate his birthday. We ate delicious cakes. We sang "Happy Birthday" to our grandpa.

Unit 9

"Party games"

When we get together with our friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play party games. We sometimes play "Pass the parcel" or "Musical chairs". My favorite party game is "Hide and seek".

"What makes Egypt special?"

There is wonderful food in Egypt like ful medames and basbousa. Egyptian people are very nice and hospitable. Egyptian authors won many prizes. Egyptian sports players are very famous all over the world.

"Cheese rolling festival"

Cheese rolling festival was one of the strangest things I ever saw. They pushed the round cheese down the hill, and hundreds of people ran after it. The person who won the race, won the cheese. It was funny and very strange, but it looked a bit dangerous.

"Chinese New Year"

Chinese people at weddings and celebrations gave the children and young people red envelopes. There was money inside the envelope and it was their way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually had an even number at the end because they said this was good luck.

Unit 10

"Social media"

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas and thoughts and have fun. We can contact our friends on social media. We can find information for our homework. We should be careful online.

"How to stay safe online"

It's very important to stay safe online. We should have strong passwords. We should be friends with people we know. We should keep our personal information secret.

"Computer games"

Computer games are fun. Computer games can be unhealthy. We spend many hours on computers, so we don't go outside. In my opinion, we can play computer games, but we can play with our friends outside, too.

Unit 11

"Transportation"

Transportation is very important to us. Some transportation goes through the air, like planes. Some transportation goes on roads, like cars and buses. Some transportation goes on rails, like trains.

"Road safety"

We should be careful on roads. We should wear a seat belt in the car. We should wear a helmet on the bike. We should wait for the green light to cross the road.

"Air pollution"

Air pollution causes breathing problems and some diseases, like asthma. Carbon dioxide that comes out of cars and burning rice straw is a reason for air pollution. To stop air pollution, we can use electric cars more and cycle to work or school. We can also plant more trees.

PART 3 Monthly Exams

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. You need presents to play ....
   (a. Pass the parcel – b. Hide and seek – c. Musical chairs – d. football)
2. Players sit in a ....
   (a. rectangle – b. circle – c. triangle – d. square)
3. Players give the .... to the next person as music plays.
   (a. paper – b. chairs – c. presents – d. birds)
4. The player who .... the present keeps it.
   (a. wraps – b. gives – c. breaks – d. unwraps)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. You need music and chairs to play ....
   a) "Pass the parcel" b) "Musical chairs"
   c) "Hide and seek" d) "Board games"
2. There are many tall buildings in the ....
   a) desert b) city c) mountain d) oasis
3. .... can change color to look like the place they live in.
   a) Birds b) Animals c) Chameleons d) Bees
4. Nada had two .... of chocolate in the party.
   a) bars b) cartons c) slices d) bottles

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

happily – was – festival – kites – Tomorino

Nada and Habiba met at the Kite festival last week. It was a beautiful (1) .... It takes place all over the world, this one (2) .... in India. Hundreds of people, young and old, flew their kites (3) .... The sky was full of (4) .... that looked like animals, birds, and monsters.

Read the text and answer the questions: 6

We use computers almost every day. People use them in their offices to do their jobs, and students use to study and do homework. Some children use them to play video games, too. Some people say that computer games are bad for children. But that is when they spend hours and hours playing them. Some computer games can help us solve problems. Some computer games need teams, too. So we can make friends and play with family.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. The pronoun "them" refers to

a) jobs b) computers c) students d) video games

2. It's .... for children when they spend hours playing computer games.

a) bad b) good c) helpful d) amazing

Answer the following questions:

3. How do people use computers?
4. When can computer games be good for children?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. Grandpa was eight when he ([illegible]) .... the box.
2. There (be not) .... electric cars in the past.
3. Last weekend, we (go) .... to Damietta to see Grandpa.
4. We saw some old photos, but we (not [illegible]) .... a song.

Punctuate the following: 1

everything was red at the La Tomatina festival

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Social media"

- What is social media?
- What can we do on social media?

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. Aziz lives in a big .... where there are lots of cars.
   (a. village – b. town – c. city – d. tent)
2. Cars put .... in the air.
   (a. oxygen – b. chemicals – c. people – d. trees)
3. .... air is dangerous for people.
   (a. Clean – b. Clear – c. Polluted – d. Open)
4. When we breathe polluted air, we feel ....
   (a. sick – b. happy – c. fit – d. well)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. Hana is on a boat trip. She likes it when she travels on ....
   a) air b) roads c) rails d) water
2. You need to be .... Don't copy information.
   a) careful b) respectful c) beautiful d) painful
3. Sara needs a .... on her bike.
   a) seat belt b) helmet c) crosswalk d) sign
4. You should keep your .... secret.
   a) website b) password c) presentation d) research

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

signs – helmet – yellow – seat belt – green

Habiba is always careful on the road. She follows the road .... (1) .... to be safe. She always wears a .... (2) .... when she is on her bike. She wears the .... (3) .... when she is in the car. She waits for the .... (4) .... light to cross the road and uses the crosswalk to cross safely.

4 **Read the text and answer the questions:** 6

Rania lives in a big town in Egypt. There are different types of transportation where she lives. Rania lives near the school, so she goes to school on foot. Her mom goes shopping on the other side of the town. She takes the bus there. Rania's dad takes the train to work because he works in the city. Trains move on rails. Every year Rania travels to visit her grandparents, who live in London. She always travels by plane.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rania goes to school ....
   a) by bus b) by train c) on foot d) by plane
2. Trains move on ....
   a) roads b) air c) water d) rails

Answer the following questions:

3. How does Rania's mom go shopping?
4. Why does Rania's dad take the train to work?

Writing

5 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** 4

1. You should (to turn) .... your phone off at night.
2. You need (look) .... right and left before you cross the road.
3. (To stop) .... here and wait for the green light.
4. You should be (help) .... to other people.

6 **Punctuate the following:** 1

you mustn t run on the road

7 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** 5

"Air pollution"

What can cause air pollution?
How can we stop air pollution?

Exam 1

30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. The .... mouse visited the country mouse.
   (a. village – b. mountain – c. oasis – d. city)
2. The country mouse was .... when the city mouse visited him.
   (a. sad – b. pleased – c. worried – d. bored)
3. The country mouse wanted to visit the .... too.
   (a. country – b. hole – c. village – d. city)
4. In the city, the country mouse was ....
   (a. happy – b. scared – c. excited – d. interested)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. The Nile is the longest .... in the world.
   a) oasis b) river c) building d) forest
2. "................" means having something different or that nobody else has.
   a) Painful b) Bully c) Special d) Hospitable
3. I need a .... of cookies.
   a) slice b) bottle c) bar d) packet
4. When I travel by ...., I go through the air.
   a) taxi b) plane c) train d) ship

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

kind – nervous – carried – home – shoes

My friend Adel remembered his first day of school. He was very .... (1). He wanted to stay .... (2) to play with his toys. He wore a blue T-shirt, gray pants and black .... (3). He was crying, but the teacher was very .... (4). He asked him to sit next to his friend Marwan.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Our grandpa lived in a village many years ago. He loved his village very much. Our grandpa's village was very quiet. He liked green plants. Our grandpa visited our city last year. He was excited to visit the city. When he walked into our city, he was sad to see a lot of cars and trucks in the city. The city is very noisy. He wanted to come back to his village. He didn't like the city.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our grandpa lived in a .... many years ago.
   a) city b) town c) park d) village
2. The city is very ....
   a) quiet b) noisy c) happy d) calm

Answer the following questions:

3. When did Grandpa visit the city?
4. How was Grandpa's village?

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. You must (cross) .... the road on the crosswalk.
2. I cut my finger. It's really (pain) ....
3. I gave her the envelope and (wish) .... her good luck.
4. My dad (be) .... forty in his last birthday.

6 Punctuate the following. 1

my sisters have yellow hats

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Sham El-Nessim"

celebrate – parks

Exam 2

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. Last .... I went to Damietta to visit my grandparents.
   (a. year – b. month – c. week – d. Monday)
2. We .... in the sea.
   (a. sat – b. enjoyed – c. sailed – d. swam)
3. My grandpa caught a/an ....
   (a. fish – b. bird – c. animal – d. dish)
4. My .... made the fish into a lovely dish.
   (a. mom – b. dad – c. grandfather – d. grandmother)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. I had a .... of pizza yesterday.

   a) packet b) slice c) carton d) a bottle
2. They love playing .... games.

   a) computer b) book c) box d) pen
3. I carry my .... to school.

   a) train b) backpack c) bed d) bike
4. My favorite party game is "........................ chairs".

   a) Pass b) Hide c) Musical d) Party

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

cheese	bus	friends	fun	put on

I go to school every day. I wake up early. I .... (1) .... a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. When I am hungry, I have a .... (2) .... sandwich. I go to school by .... (3) .... I meet my .... (4) .... and we play and study.

Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Yesterday, we had a picnic in the park. We went to celebrate our friend Nader's birthday. We played "Hide and Seek". Nader was the seeker, and we were the players. He closed his eyes and counted to ten, and we hid. Nader found Mona, and she became the next seeker. Ali was the winner because he was the last one left. We enjoyed the picnic so much.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. We had a picnic ....
   a) yesterday b) last week c) last month d) last year
2. The winner was ....
   a) Nader b) Mona c) Ali d) Ahmed

Answer the following questions:

3. Why did they go to the park?
4. Who was the next seeker?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. The wind pulled the kite, it (feel) .... alive.
2. We (not have) .... a shopping mall ten years ago.
3. The boat trip was (wonder) ....
4. What are you (do) ...., Dalia?

Punctuate the following: 1

can you give your friend some advice

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Social media"

share ideas – find information

Exam 3

30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. Reem had a .... yesterday.
   (a. presentation – b. party – c. project – d. job)
2. She had a slice of cake and a .... of juice.
   (a. glass – b. carton – c. bottle – d. bar)
3. She also had a packet of ....
   (a. cakes – b. cheese – c. juice – d. cookies)
4. She was thirsty, that's why she had a bottle of ....
   (a. water – b. tea – c. juice – d. milk)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. We can .... ideas and thoughts on social media.
   a) log in b) share c) contact d) bully
2. Egyptian people are .... and friendly to visitors.
   a) unhelpful b) hospitable c) painful d) bad
3. The children play .... in birthday parties.
   a) games b) trees c) sweets d) cakes
4. When I travel by bus and ...., I am on the road.
   a) ship b) car c) boat d) plane

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

like – swam – ate – happy – was

Ahmed and Ali went to Alexandria. They ....(1)........ in the sea, which was deep and blue. They played on the beach. They ....(2)........ pizza. In the evening, they were very ....(3)........ . They watched a nice movie at the cinema. It ....(4)........ a day to remember.

Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts and information. We can have fun, share photos, or talk to friends and family on social media. We can also find information for our homework and learn interesting things, too. On the other hand, there are some reasons why social media can be bad. People can take your personal information, and some people can bully you.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a. bullying b. social media c. cell phones d. computer games
2. We can use social media to find .... for our homework.
   a. copy b. fun c. information d. reasons

Answer the following questions.

3. What are the pros of using social media?
4. What are the cons of using social media?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. You need (wear) .... a helmet on your bike.
2. ([illegible]) .... information. Write your own words.
3. She ([illegible] not) .... buy a new dress last week.
4. Who (be) .... there in the party yesterday evening?

Punctuate the following: 1

what are you doing, Dalia

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"A birthday party"

made cake – sang a song

Exam 4

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 5

1. We can change things to stop .... pollution
   (a. water – b. air – c. land – d. soil)
2. Dad goes to work with his .... in the same car
   (a. mom – b. his friend – c. grandpa – d. sister)
3. Mom takes the .... to work
   (a. train – b. taxi – c. bus – d. car)
4. My sister .... to school.
   (a. walks – b. drives – c. cycles – d. sails)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. My dad needs a seat belt in his ....
   a) car b) bike c) road d) work
2. Can you pass me this .... of water, please?
   a) packet b) bar c) bottle d) slice
3. You can .... photos on social media
   a) share b) cut c) copy d) take
4. We ate healthy .... like apples and frozen yogurt
   a. deserts b. desserts c. vegetables d. dishes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

park – eggs – Egyptians – outside – fish

Sham El-Nessim is celebrated every year on Easter Monday, which is the day after Coptic Easter. All ....(1)....... celebrate Sham El-Nessim. During Sham El-Nessim, people eat salted ....(2)......., lettuce, green onions and boiled eggs. During the festival, people like to paint boiled ....(3)....... They have picnics and spend time ....(4)

Read the text and answer the questions: 6

I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting. I logged into a website and created a password to find information. Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are. They have amazing eyes and they can see all around. I need to do more research. I want to message my friend Eman and chat with her. She knows some great websites and finds some nice pictures. We don't copy information. We find ideas and write our own words.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) passwords   b) chameleons   c) colors   d) friends
2. The underlined word "amazing" means ....
   a) bad   b) ugly   c) wonderful   d) angry

Answer the following questions:

3. What do we need to find information on a website?
4. What is special about chameleons?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. We felt happy. It (be) .... a day to remember.
2. It was quiet when I (live) .... here.
3. You need to be (care) .... when you cross the road.
4. Are you (make) .... a presentation about chameleons?

Punctuate the following: 1

nada shares photos on social media

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"The Nile"

branches – longest

Exam 5

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. Nadia is doing .... about bears.
   (a homework – b a presentation – c research – d a project)
2. She knows many useful ....
   (a pictures – b websites – c passwords – d blogs)
3. She created a .... to log into the school's library.
   (a chat – b message – c password – d website)
4. Nadia is .... she doesn't copy information.
   (a painful – b respectful – c colorful – d beautiful)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. The oasis is in the middle of the ....
   a) city b) desert c) building d) river
2. My mother ate two .... of cheese for breakfast.
   a) bottles b) pieces c) packets d) cartoons
3. Ships and .... go on water.
   a) boats b) cars c) planes d) buses
4. I logged into the school .... website to get some information.
   a) cinema b) park c) library d) garden

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

hide – last – first – seeker – place

"Hide and Seek" is a very popular game. All you need is a wide .... (1) to play it. One player, called the .... (2) .... closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players .... (3) .... The seeker tries to find them. The .... (4) .... player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker.

Read the text and answer the questions: 6

My name is Nada. I remember my first day of school. I was very nervous. I put on a red T-shirt, blue pants, and black shoes. Mom and I walked to school. I said goodbye and walked into the classroom. The teacher asked me to sit next to Jana. The teacher was kind and friendly. Jana was nice. We studied English and played games. The next day, I wanted to go to school.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nada felt .... on her first day of school.
   a) nervous b) happy c) angry d) hungry
2. The underlined word "friendly" means ....
   a) nice to us b) bad to us c) very nervous d) very sad

Answer the following questions:

3. What did Nada wear on her first day of school?
4. How was Nada's teacher?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. You should (use) .... social media safely.
2. You need (wear) .... a seat belt in your car.
3. Hala's dress has many colors. It's (color) ....
4. We (take) .... some photos and sang a song.

Punctuate the following: 1

what did it say

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"A trip to the sea"

beach – fish

Exam 6

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. Air pollution is .... for us.
   (a. good – b. healthy – c. dangerous – d. helpful)
2. When we breathe polluted air, we .... and feel sick.
   (a. sleep – b. laugh – c. cough – d. see)
3. In .... parents don't drive children to school.
   (a. Egypt – b. London – c. Italy – d. China)
4. The children walk or .... to school.
   (a. sail – b. fly – c. drive – d. cycle)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. Can I have a .... of water, please?
   a) slice b) bar c) bottle d) piece
2. People you don't know can .... you in photos.
   a) share b) contact c) tag d) log
3. To play "Pass the parcel" .... the present in lots of paper.
   a) open b) wrap c) unwrap d) give
4. Basbousa is a thin, ... semolina cake with syrup.
   a) salted b) boiled c) sweet d) spicy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

brings – shortest – important – earth – longest

The Amazon and the Nile are very long rivers. But the Nile is the .... (1) river in the world. It's 6,670 kilometers long. This is like traveling to the center of the .... (2). The Nile is .... (3) to all of us. It .... (4) life to the whole of Egypt.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. Eid happens on the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon. Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk, but you can buy them from a bakery, too. People say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends. People go to the mosque to pray and spend time with their families.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. The 10th Islamic month is called ....
   a. Ramadan b. May c. Shawwal d. June
2. People go to .... to pray.
   a) gardens b. parks c. clubs d. masques

Answer the following questions:

3. When is Eid Al-Fitr?
4. How do people celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1. What (to make) .... us special?
2. Some computer games can be (help) ....
3. Two years ago, my grandma (be) .... 90 years old.
4. I (drink) .... some coffee an hour ago.

Punctuate the following:

1

sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"How to stop air pollution"

straw – bike

Exam 7

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. Mazen and Dalia .... to school together.
(a. walk – b. drive – c. sail – d. cycle)
2. Hani drove through the .... when Mazen was in the middle.
(a. street – b. highway – c. crosswalk – d. corridor)
3. Hani couldn't stop because he was going too ....
(a. slow – b. careful – c. good – d. fast)
4. When Mazen fell over, Dalia was ....
(a. scared – b. excited – c. happy – d. well)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. We have green .... near the Nile.
a) lands b) rivers c) forests d) water
2. Habiba never goes to school on ....
a) bus b) foot c) taxi d) train
3. Everything was red in the .... festival.
a) cheese rolling b) La Tomatina c) kite d) New Year
4. Nadia had two .... of pizza.
a) cartoons b) bottles c) slices d) bars

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

half – unfriendly – energy – hospitable – visitors

Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. More than (1) .... of Egyptians are under the age of 30. This means we are full of (2) .... We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to (3) .... We are very (4) .... people.

Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Last week was my father's birthday. He was fifty years old. All my family came to celebrate. My aunts, uncles, and cousins came to our house. There was a big table with many types of foods and drinks. There were many desserts and sweets, too. My mother made a big chocolate cake. My sister made delicious cookies. We sang "Happy Birthday" to my father. It was a great party. I gave a present to my father.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. The party was for my ....
   a) sister's wedding b) father's birthday
   c) mother's birthday d) birthday
2. I gave a .... to my father.
   a) flower b) cake c) computer d) present

Answer the following questions:

3. When was the father's birthday?
4. What did the sister do on the birthday?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. I ([illegible]) .... many kites in the festival last month.
2. The painting was really (beauty) ....
3. You shouldn't ([illegible]) .... people online.
4. There (is) .... cookies and cakes.

Punctuate the following: 1

Farmers don't burn rice straw in gharbia

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Computer games"

• solve problems – need teams

Exam 8

30

Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. 5

1. The .... festival happens all over the world.
   (a. cheese rolling – b. Eid Al-Fitr – c. La Tomatina – d. kite)
2. Nour visited the kite festival in ....
   (a. Egypt – b. London – c. India – d. Spain)
3. Hundreds of people flew their ....
   (a. kites – b. planes – c. birds – d. flags)
4. Nour tried to fly a kite, but it was ....
   (a. easy – b. possible – c. difficult – d. simple)

Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. We can use energy-saving .... in our apartments.
   a) fires b) lightbulbs c) cars d) balconies
2. When I travel by ...., I go through the air.
   a) train b) bike c) plane d) car
3. In Ramadan, Muslims .... during the day.
   a) play b) fast c) make d) work
4. When someone is hurt, we call for a/an ....
   a) taxi b) ambulance c) friend d) car

Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

Earth – reptiles – long – home – longest

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It's about 6,670 kilometers .... (1). That's like traveling to the center of the .... (2). It's .... (3) for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. One of the longest .... (4), the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Hisham is my best friend. He is from Giza, but he lives in Cairo with his grandfather. He visits his family on Fridays. His father is a doctor, and his mother is a teacher. Hisham is very good at English. I am very good at math. We are clever, so our teachers are happy. Yesterday, we went to the swimming pool because it was very hot. But time was short. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. It was a day to remember.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hisham's father works in a ....
   a) garage b) sea c) hospital d) cinema
2. The underlined word "clever" means ....
   a) bad b) good c) angry d) happy

Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Hisham live?
4. Why did they go to the swimming pool?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. How many kids (be) .... at the party yesterday?
2. You must (to follow) .... road signs.
3. (Not cross) .... from behind a car.
4. Omar didn't (wanted) .... to go to school on his first day of school.

Punctuate the following: 1

which foods did Ms Dina eat

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Egyptian food"

wonderful – basbousa

Exam 9

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   (a. shortest – b. tallest – c. longest – d. highest)
2. It travels through .... countries.
   (a. 9 – b. 10 – c. 11 – d. 12)
3. The Nile River is 6,670 .... long.
   (a. meters – b. kilometers – c. centimeters – d. kilograms)
4. The Nile has .... branches in Egypt.
   (a. three – b. two – c. one – d. four)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. It's really .... for children to play computer games for a long time.
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) well d) good
2. Egyptians are very .... people, they welcome all their visitors.
   a) hospitable b) painful c) creative d) scary
3. Ships and boats move on ....
   a) water b) roads d) air d) land
4. You need to create a .... to log into the school website.
   a) foot b) password c) play d) game

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

take – by – travel – on – bus

I have a lot of friends. My friends come to school by different means of transportation. My friend Amr goes to school .....(1)..... foot. My friend Sara goes .....(2)..... car. My friend Ali goes by .....(3)..... . Some friends .....(4)..... the metro.

Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Last month, we had a picnic in the park. We went to celebrate Sham El-Nessim. We played "Hide and Seek". Ali was the seeker, and we were the players. He closed his eyes and counted to ten. We hid, and Ali tried to find us. Ali found Mona, and she became the next seeker. Karim was the winner because he was the last one left. After playing, we had delicious sandwiches, and we ate salted fish. We enjoyed the picnic so much.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. We had a picnic ....
   a) yesterday b) last week c) on Monday d) last month
2. They ate .... and salted fish.
   a) cookies b) bananas c) sandwiches d) pizza

Answer the following questions:

3. What did they celebrate at the park?
4. Who was the winner?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. You need (wait) .... for the green light to cross the road.
2. (To travel) .... on foot or by bike.
3. Heba (eat) .... two slices of cake last night.
4. We (don't) .... feel happy in the party last week.

Punctuate the following: 1

egyptians are very friendly to visitors

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"My birthday party"

birthday party – delicious cake

Exam 10

30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. The chameleon is a kind of ....
   (a. fish – b. birds – c. lizards – d. animals)
2. Chameleons live in forests and ....
   (a. rivers – b. beaches – c. homes – d. deserts)
3. They eat insects and ....
   (a. leaves – b. trees – c. branches – d. roots)
4. They can change .... to the place where they are.
   (a. name – b. color – c. place – d. food)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. He won the game. He's the ....
   a) loser b) parcel c) winner d) present
2. She lives in a tall .... in the city.
   a) mountain b) tree c) building d) forest
3. I drank a .... of juice.
   a) packet b) bar c) slice d) carton
4. You only need .... and a wide space to play "Hide and seek".
   a) music b) presents c) chairs d) players

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

sunrise – sunset – Eid – help – Muslims

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before .... (1) .... is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many .... (2) .... fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until .... (3) .... In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. It is also a time to .... (4) .... other people.

Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Some people think that social media is great and fun, but we should be careful and stay safe online. Many people think that watching too much TV is not a good idea. It wastes our time because we can spend many hours watching it. In my opinion, watching too much TV can be [illegible] to learn what is going on in the world, but we should not let it waste our precious time.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about

   a) pollution b) festivals
   c) school subjects d) social media

2. The underlined word "[illegible]" means "…………"

   a) bad b) harmful c) good d) weak

Answer the following questions:

3. How can TV waste our time?
4. What should we do when we use social media?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. Nour ([illegible]) ………… in a village in the past.
2. Nada ([illegible] be) ………… nervous on her first day of school.
3. Computers and tablets are very ([illegible]) …………
4. You shouldn't ([illegible]) ………… people that you don't know.

Punctuate the following: 1

i like seeing my whole family

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"The month of Ramadan"

fast – help

Exam 11

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. Last ...., Ali visited his uncle who lives by the sea.
   (a. Friday – b. Monday – c. Sunday – d. Tuesday)
2. Ali and his cousins went to the ....
   (a. park – b. market – c. mall – d. beach)
3. They saw lots of fish and a/an ...., too.
   (a. bird – b. crab – c. octopus – d. ant)
4. Ali's .... made the fish into a lovely dish.
   (a. mother – b. aunt – c. grandma – d. sister)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. Mona helps many people. She is really ....
   a) painful b) careful c) useful d) helpful
2. Look at the .... You can't swim here.
   a) board b) sign c) paper d) present
3. Hana traveled by .... She likes to go through air.
   a) train b) plane c) car d) metro
4. I sent a/an .... to my friend on the internet.
   a) book b) letter c) drink d) email

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

mix – delicious – unhealthy – medames – beans

Egypt is famous for its rich culture and delicious dishes. Ful .... (1) is a famous Egyptian dish. Egyptian people ate it thousands of years ago. It's .... (2) .... cooked slowly and served with lots of olive oil and garlic. You can .... (3) .... it with lemon juice, onions and salt. It's very .... (4)

5 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

People say that computer games are bad for children. Children spend many hours on their computers or tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy. But sometimes computer games are good for children because they need to solve problems in some games. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. "……………………" means father and mother.
   a) Children b) Problems c) Games d) Parents
2. Computer games are sometimes ……………
   a) good b) hot c) angry d) cold

Answer the following questions:

3. Why are computer games bad for children?
4. How can computer games be useful for children?

Writing

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. You shouldn't (gives) …………………… anyone your personal information.
2. You (must) …………………… run on roads.
3. Grandpa ([illegible]) …………………… an octopus yesterday.
4. He walked into the classroom and ([illegible]) …………………… next to Adel.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

people can take your personal information

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Egyptian people"

helpful – hospital

Exam 12

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. 90% of Egypt is ……………
   (a. green lands – b. a river – c. a desert – d. a forest)
2. Near the Nile is ……………… and beautiful.
   (a. green – b. black – c. gray – d. yellow)
3. There are ……………… in the south and the east.
   (a. beaches – b. mountains – c. rivers – d. forests)
4. It even snows in the ……………… region.
   (a. south – b. west – c. north – d. Sinai)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. In "Musical chairs" the player without a chair is ……………
   a) seeker b) winner c) out d) first
2. She drank two ……………… of water.
   a) slices b) bottles c) pieces d) packets
3. Eid Al-Fitr comes after ……………
   a) Shawwal b) Ramadan c) summer d) Sham El-Nessim
4. I sent my friend a ……………… about the information she needed.
   a) password b) chat c) message d) website

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

cheese – bus – wake – friends – family

I go to school every day. I ……(1)…… up early. When I am hungry, I have a ……(2)…… sandwich. I go by ……(3)…… to school. I have fun at school. I meet my ……(4)…… and we play and study.

Read the text and answer the questions: 6

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The city mouse invited his friend to see the city. He said the city was pretty and full of bright lights. The country mouse was excited to visit the city. They caught a train at eight as it started to rain. When they arrived, they both had a great time, and the country mouse thanked the city mouse.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1. The country mouse was .... when the city mouse visited him.

   a) sad b) worried c) pleased d) afraid

2. They caught a .... at eight.

   a) bus b) plane c) taxi d) train

Answer the following questions:

3. What did the city mouse say about the city?
4. What happened when they arrived?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1. She shouldn't (spoke) .... to strangers online.
2. You can't (parking) .... here.
3. Yesterday, my dad (forget) .... his keys at home.
4. My aunt (write) .... an email for me two days ago.

Punctuate the following: 1

dalia s dress is beautiful

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"A day at the beach"

- When did you go to the beach?
- What did you do on the beach?

Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. The most popular Egyptian .... is ful medames.
   (weather – food – drink)
2. Ful medames is .... with olive oil and garlic.
   (bad – hot – delicious)
3. Egyptians eat it for ....
   (lunch – dinner – breakfast)

Reading

Read and complete the dialog:

chameleons – change – information – doing

Mom: What are you ....(1)........ Dalia?

Dalia: I'm doing my homework about ....(2)........

Mom: Do you have any ....(3)........ about them?

Dalia: Yes, they can ....(4)........ color. They are the same color as the place where they are.

Read the passage and answer the questions:

Heba went to her friend's Mona birthday party yesterday. The party was at the park. She had fun at the party. There was a big table with many types of food on it. Heba was hungry. She ate three slices of chocolate cake and a carton of orange juice but the cookies looked delicious, and Heba wanted to try them. She ate two packets of cookies and drank a bottle of water because she felt thirsty. On her way home, Heba didn't feel well. She looked a bit green.

A. Choose the correct word:

1. Mona's birthday party was at the ([illegible])
2. Heba was ([illegible]) in the party.
3. Heba ate three ([illegible]) of chocolate cake.

Answer the following questions:

4. How many packets of cookies did Heba eat?
5. Why did Heba drink a bottle of water?

Choose the correct answer:

1. You (should – shouldn't – need) stay at home. It's raining heavily outside.
2. He goes to school (at – in – by) bus.
3. Saima had a (slice – bottle – carton) of cake.
4. Many Muslims (fast – eat – run) during the day of Ramadan.
5. It's not easy to climb a (river – mountain – building).

Writing

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. share – can – photos – You.

2. is – the – What – matter?

3. played – They – threw – a ball – games – and

4. my – password – I – keep – secret – should

5. crossed – at – Hoda – the – road – the crosswalk

Exam 2

Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 I was .... on my first day of school.
(happy – excited – nervous)

2 I sat next to a boy called ....
(Hani – Hesham – Ali)

3 We .... and played games.
(slept – studied – stayed)

Reading

2 Read and complete the dialog:

Did – feel – matter – carton

Hazem : What's the ......(1)...... ?

Reem : I don't ......(2)...... well.

Hazem : ......(3)...... you eat too much?

Reem : Yes, I had three slices of cake and a ......(4)...... of juice.

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. It's the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. Every year, we color eggs and give them to our friends and family. At Sham El-Nessim last year, my little sister Mona colored six eggs for our grandparents. Later that day, we went to the park for a picnic. Mom and Grandma made lots of delicious food. We had a great time.

A Choose the correct word:

1 Sham El-Nessim is the (newest – oldest – biggest) Egyptian festival.

2 It comes the day (before – after – in) Coptic Easter.

3 We (color – paint – brush) eggs in Sham El-Nessim.

3 Answer the following questions:

4 How many eggs did Mona color? ....

5 What did Mom and Grandma make? ....

4 Choose the correct answer:

1 Playing computer games for a long time is (healthy – unhealthy – helpful).

2 We need to (chat – do – log into) websites to get information.

3 A: (Where – What – When) is your birthday? B: It's on Thursday 15^{th}.

4 The city is very (quite – noisy – slow). The sounds are loud.

5 She (visited – visit – visits) her grandparents yesterday.

Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 road – on – careful – Be – the.

....

2 water – We – by – on – travel – ship.

....

3 excited – mouse – The – was – country.

....

4 school – foot – Who – on – comes – to?

....

5 did – you – When – up – get – yesterday?

....



PART 5 TAPE SCRIPTS

March Monthly Exam

To play "Pass the parcel", you need to wrap the present in lots of paper. The players sit in a circle. Play some music. Players give the present to the next person. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

April Monthly Exam

Aziz lives in a big city where there are lots of cars. Cars put chemicals into the air and make the air polluted. Polluted air is dangerous for people. When they breathe it in, they cough and feel sick. Aziz thinks it's better to drive less share a car with another person.

Final Exams

Exam 1

The city mouse visited the country mouse. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend some seeds. The country mouse wanted to visit the city, too. There was a lot of noise in the city. The country mouse was scared and wanted to go back to the country again.

Exam 2

Last week, I went to Damietta to visit my grandparents. I went with my family. We swam in the sea. My grandfather caught a fish. My grandmother made it into a lovely dish. We had a nice time there.

Exam 3

Reem had a party yesterday. She had a slice of cake, drank a carton of juice, ate a bar of chocolate, and ate a piece of cheese. She also had a packet of cookies. She was thirsty; that's why she had a bottle of water.

Exam 4

We decided to change some things as a family to stop air pollution. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister walks to school because her school is closer.

Exam 5

Nadia is doing homework about bears. She needs to do a lot of research. She knows many useful websites. She created a password to log into the school's library. She looked at websites to find nice pictures. She is respectful, and she doesn't copy information.

Exam 6

Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick. Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive their children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school.

Exam 7

Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. Today, Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then, Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. Mazen fell over. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

Exam 8

The Kite Festival is a beautiful festival that happens all around the world. But the one Nour visited last month was in India. Hundreds of people, young and old, flew their kites. The sky was full of animals, fish, and monsters. Nour tried to fly one of the kites; it was very difficult!

Exam 9

The Nile River is the longest river in the world. It travels through 11 countries. It is about 6,670 kilometers long; that's like traveling to the center of the Earth. The Nile has two branches in Egypt.

Exam 10

The chameleon is a kind of lizards. They live in Africa, Asia, and Europe in forests and deserts. They eat insects and leaves. Their color can be yellow, brown, red, black, or green; they can change their color to the place where they are.

Exam 11

Last Monday, Ali visited our uncle, who lives by the sea. He and his cousins went to the beach, where they saw lots of fish and an octopus, too. They swam in the water that was deep and blue. Ali caught a big fish. His aunt made it into a lovely dish.

Exam 12

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile, it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

Al-Azhar Exams

Exam 1

Egypt is famous for its food. The most popular Egyptian food is ful medames. Ful medames is delicious with olive oil and garlic. Egyptians eat it for breakfast.

Exam 2

I remember my first day of school. I was nervous. I sat next to a boy called Hesham. We studied and played games.